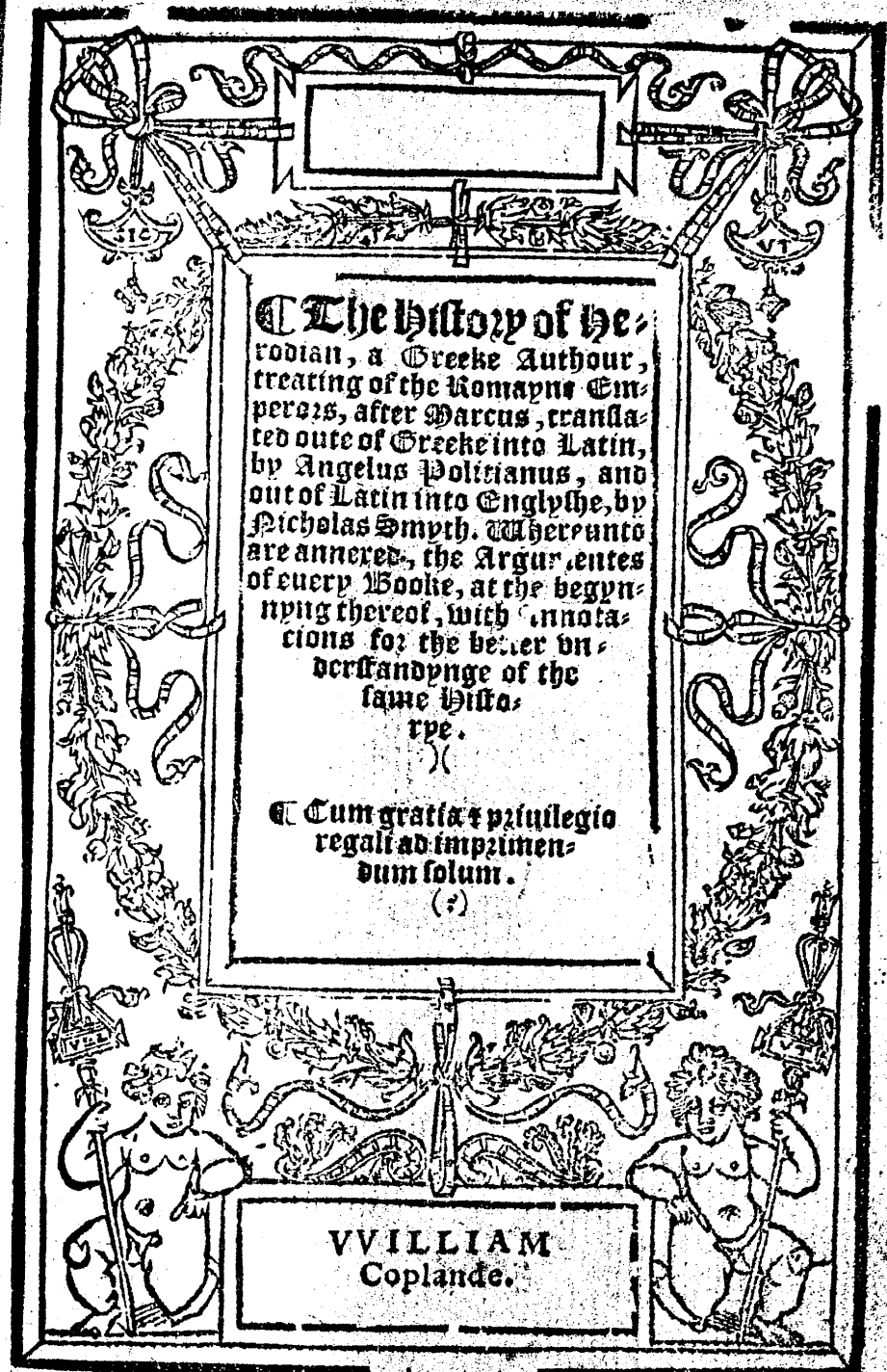
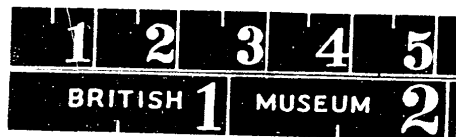


Perfect

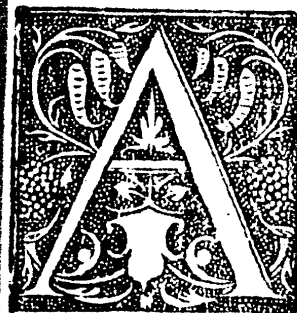


The History of the
Roman, a Greeke Authour,
treating of the Romayne Em-
perors, after Marcus, transla-
ted out of Greeke into Latin,
by Angelus Politianus, and
out of Latin into Englyshe, by
Nicholas Smyth. Wherunto
are annexed, the Arguementes
of euery Booke, at the begyn-
nyng thereof, with annota-
tions for the better vn-
derstandynge of the
same Histo-
rye.

Cum gratia & priuilegio
regali ad imprimen-
dum solum.
(s)

WILLIAM
Copland.

To the ryghte honorable Lorde, Wylliam
 Earle of Penbroke, &c. Lorde President of the King
 and Queenes Maiesties Counsaile, in the Mar-
 ches of Wales, and one of thes Maiesties most
 honorable prerie Counsaile, his humble De-
 vout Nicholas Smyth, wyth all
 thynges prospe-
 rous.



Amongest all those, that haue by
 thes wytyng, beautified the
 Greke & Latyn tongue, none are
 supposed (right honorable & ver-
 tuous Lord) so much to haue pro-
 fited moztall affaires, as Histori-
 ographers, who haue saythfully
 reduced into wytyng the actes &
 deades of such, as in fame (either
 good or euill) haue passed thys
 transitorye lyfe. They haue put before our eyes, the ly-
 ues, maners, and doinges, of all sortes of men, wth thes
 counsellors, fortunes, and aduentures, the whiche thes
 posteritie maye, as in a paynted Table beholde: and
 therby learne to profyte, as well the Common wealthe,
 as their owne priuate estate. Chieflye, through the ma-
 nyfold examples, bothe good, and euill, conteyned in
 Histories, all sortes of people may attayne by them, to
 moze knowledge in thozte space; then otherwyle they
 might in al thes liues, if y^e same were much longer then
 the commo age of man. For prose wherof, we haue the
 memoze of Lucius Lucullus the noble Romaine: who
 (as Cicero wytyeth) at his departure fro Rome against
 the great kyng Pythidates) beyng viterly unskyllfull
 in warfare, whyles he sayled on the Sea, so trauayled,
 in conferring wyth learned men, and reading of Histo-
 ries, that when he arriued in Asie, he was so excellent
 in warlike knowledge, that by the confession of Py-
 thidates, he deserved preferment aboue all the Chiefe-
 captes in warre, that were before his tyme. Alexander
 Deuerus also, Emperour of Rome, when so euer he
 A.ii. made



made preparation to warre, accustomed to consulte w
 such as were expert in Histories. And good cause why.
 For yf Ase (as sayeth Afranius) hath engendred wyle,
 dome: and Democryte as the Moother, hath brought her
 into lyghte: Alho oughte to be moze sage, and discrete,
 then they whiche retyne in memorie, the deades, & ma-
 ners, not only of one age, or Citie, but of al ages, & naci-
 ons: Thys much considerynge (ryght excellent Lorde)
 and enduced by the prudente wordes of Salust, in hys
 Preface to Catilines wonderfull Coniuration, wher-
 by he exhorteth man (yf he entende to be reputed wor-
 thyer then other mortall Creatures) so to employe hys
 whole labour, and studie, that he ouerspy not hys lyfe,
 in slouthful silence, as sauage, and brute beastes, whom
 Nature hath fourmed prone, & subiect, to y filthie lustes
 of the bealy: I haue enterprysed to translate out of Latyn
 this presente Historie of Herodian, a Greke Authour,
 treating of the Romayn Emperours, betwene Marcus
 the Philosopher, and Gordianus the yonger, not be-
 fore (I thynke) brought into oure Englyshe tonge. And
 haue presumed, to dedicat y same vnto your good Lord-
 shyp, whome not onely fame, but also experience, doeth
 apparantly proue, to be the perfect Patrone of knyght-
 ly prowes, and vertue. Humbly besechyng your good
 Lordshyp, of your accustomed clemencie, so to accepte
 thys my synple gift, beyng the Croppe of my barreyne
 Haruest, as may embolden other toyfullye to embrace
 it, and encourage me, to employe my pooze labour fur-
 ther hereafter. And so I remayne a continuall Inter-
 cessor to almyghtye God, for the prosperous estate
 of youre Lordshyppe, wth contynuall
 encrease of vertue, and
 honour.

THE PROHEME OF
 the historie of Herodian, treat-
 ing of the Romayne Em-
 perours, after
 Marcus.



Deu whiche haue delynered vnto
 theyr posteritie auncient tradici-
 ons, and endeuored to renewe by
 wytyng the olde memoire of hy-
 stories: They I saye, earnestly
 affecting the renowne of erudici-
 on and learning: and busily stu-
 dyng to preserue theyr names
 from thiniurie of obliuion, did employ moche lesse
 labour in searching oute the truthe, then in trim-
 mynge the stile of their Histories. Knowinge pre-
 cisely, that althoughe they falsified any thing longe
 before theyr time passed, the same coulde not be repre-
 hendid, and yet neuertheles them selves shold (throughe
 the pleasaunt eloquence, of their finely penned talke)
 obtayne very muche commoditie, of their paynesfull
 trauaile. Other some beyng moued, with particuler
 enmityes and hatred of Tyrantes, or elles fallen in-
 to vnumerable flaterye, with prayseing of Princes,
 Cyties, & priuate persons, dyd throughe skylfull know-
 ledge of wytyng, blase and extoll farre aboue truthe,
 thinges that by them selues were synple & of no esti-
 macion. But I in contrarie wyse, haue enterprysed
 to wyte an historie, not receyued of others, vnkno-
 wen, or elles wanting witnesse, but at this present,
 fired and remaining in the memories of the Readers,
 and collected with synghuler truethe and diligence.
 Trustyng, that the knowledge of those thinges, (be-
 ing many and great, and not longe agoone happened)
 wyll not be vnpleasaunt to the posterite. For yf a mā
 wyll well ponder al the ages synce the time of Augus-
 tus, (when the Romayne superiouritie was commyt-
 ted to the arbitrement of one man) he shall not fynde
 in all these .ii. c. yeres, so many almost perdy are reck-
 ned

The proleme.

ned betwene Augustus, and Marcus) so diuers successions in the empire, so variable chaunces and happes in the warres either Ciuile or foieyn, so manie nations raised by, or so many of our owne and barbarous Cities destroyed, besides earthquakes and plagues, the liues also of Princes, and Tyrants so straunge and incredible, that none or at the lest berie few like examples can be founde amongs our elders. Of whiche princes, some of longe tyme remayned in authoritie, other some a shorthe while enioyed the dominion yea many of them scarcely entered into honour, and being onlie named Emperours, lost the empire the very same daye they tooke it vpon them. And when by the space of .lx. yerres, the Citie of Rome had sustained more gouernours then for the time sufficed, it came to passe, that many straunge thinges and worthy admiration chaunced. For the Princes somewhat stricken in age, as men expert in sundry affayres, did prudently gouerne themselves and their charge.

On thother side the yonge men ledinge their liues in voluptuousnes, inuented and commaunded new thinges payly. wherbie it happened, that the yonge princes, beinge of unlike age and licence, did also follow unlike studie & manners. Now these thinges were done, in obseruinge a iust order of the tyme and princes, we will now declare.

(*)



The contentes of the fyrste booke.



He Authour beginneth his historye at the ende of Marcus Antoninus reigne, who was successor vnto Aurelius Antoninus surnamed Pius: And it behoueth to know, that after the opinion of Eusebius in his tables, Marcus Antoninus was the .xiii. Emperour of Rome. But after the opinion of other Historiographers, he was the .xvii. The fyrst was Julius Cesar. The seconde Octavius Cesar, Augustus. The thirde Tiberius Cesar. The .iiii. Caius Caligula. The .v. Claudius Cesar. The .vi. Nero Claudius Cesar. The .vii. Sergius Galba. The .viii. Otto Siluius. The .ix. Aulus Vitellius. The .x. Flavius Vespasianus. The .xi. Titus Vespasianus. The twelue Domitianus. Of whiche twelue Suetonius Tranquillus hath wyrtten compendiouslye. Paulus Orosius sayeth, that Perua succeeded Domitian, after Perua Traian, after Traian, Adrian, after Adrian Antoninus Pius, wyth his two Sonnes Aurelius, and Lucius, whome Marcus Antoninus Verus, and Aurelius Commodus, his brother succeeded. Which Marcus Antoninus (of whome presently the question is) ouerliued the other, and remained sole Emperour beinge the .xvii. in nombre, reckening Julius Cesar for the fyrste. Of the lignage, vertue, science, and decease, of this Marcus, Herodian speaketh in the begynnynge of this fyrste booke: after whome his Sonne Commodus, raigned: beinge in the begynning, gentle, meeke, and of good disposition. But after he had escaped the Treason of Lucilla his owne Syster, Perennes the Capitayne of his garde, Ma. ternus, and Cleander the liutenante of his armie, he altered to dissolute and dishonest lyfe, and Tyrannie. Wherfore he was poysoned by Marcia one of his Concubines, Letus the Capitaine of his Garde, & Clecius his principall Châberlaine: And after at their appoyntment, strangled by Marcianus.

¶ I I I I I.

The fyfthe booke

of the hystorie of
Herodian.

Fol. i.



The emperor Marcus had The chil
many daughters, and. ii. derne of
sonnes onely, of whome Marcus.
the yonger named Veril. Verill:
simus, by myschaunce di. mus.
ed in his tender age. The
other named Commodus, Comm:
the father broughte by to dus.
great diligence and care.
And haupnge gotten from
all partes excellentie lear-
ned men, waged the with

large stipendes, that they shoulde euery man for his
parte, garnyshe the maners and disposicion of his
sonne. He marped his daughters at their rypp age,
vnto the best of the Senatours, choosyng to his son-
nes in lawe, not suche as coulde shew furthe large pe-
degrues of their auncestrie, or suche as vaunted them
selues of their great treasure, but those which excel-
led in perfecte modestie of maners, and Innocencie
of lyfe. For that he esteamed, to be the onely, perfecte,
and stable, ryche of the mynde.

¶ He forgate no vertue, wherin he exercised not hym. The good
selfe: beynge so studious of the antiquitie of learnyng, disposici-
that in the same, he might be compared, to the best ey. on of
ther of the Greeces, or of the Romaynes. For prose Marcus,
hereof, there are many thinges bothe spoken, and wri-
ten, by hym, comen euen vnto our tyme. He was so
curteis, that he woulde gentely take euery comen vnto
to hym by the hande: not permytting, that any man
shoulde be forbidden by his garde, the appoaching vnto
to his person. And he onely, amonges all the Empe-
ro. rs, bled the study of Sapience, not in woordes, or
knowledge of decrees, but in grauitie of maners, and
continencie of lyfe. Wherby it came to passe, that the
same age and tyme, brought furthe a great encrease of
wysc men, for communely, men are wout to folowe
the.

The historie of Herodian

the lynes and maners of their pynces. But now, as touching the notable actes by hym done, as well at Rome, as elles where, how he behaued hym selfe also, towarde the Barbarous nations enhabytinge the East, and the Weste, the same are contayned in the monumentes of many excellent learned men. But those thinges, whyche (after the death of Marcus, by all ages.) I bothe saue and harde, (whereof many by experience my selfe knewe, as one traded in common affayres, and pynces businesse) I haue taken vpon me to wyte.

Pannonie. **Whyles** the olde Emperour Marcus sojourned amonges the Pannoniens, a very greuous disease came vpon hym, not onely woene wth age, but also soze broken wth continuall trauaile and care. Wherefore, when he perceued no remedy but death, he beganne greatly to doubt in hym selfe, lest hys Sonne, (who was but then entered the fyrst yeres of his Adolescence.) eyther throughe behemencie of hys yowthe, or elles throughe an inordynate lycence, whyche he should haue after hys fathers deathe, leuyng all good censure, and sturp aparte, wold addyce him selfe to dyonkenesse, and superfluous ryot. For he knewe well, that the myndes of yonge men, easily decline, to immoderate superfluytie, from laudable and honest discipline. He was troubled besydes, wth the memory of many princes, whiche beyng but yonge men, tooke vpon them the gouernaunce of royaulmes: as well of **Dionysius** the Tyrant of Sicile, (whose intemperatenes of lyfe was so great, that he endowed with richest rewardes, thiauentours of newe pleasures: as also of them whyche succeeded Alexander, of Macedonie: who dyd so shamefullye and Tyrannouslye raygne, that they purchased to hys kyngedome, a notorious obloquy. For **Ptolomens**, fell into so detestable lyfe, that contrarie to the lawes of the Macedoniens, and all the Grekes, he was entangled, with thickest mariage of hys owne Syster. **Antigonus** also, (to represent the **God Bacchus**) was wonte in steade of the Macedonien Diademe and crowne

to

The fyrste booke.

Fol. ii.

to were a Garlande of puris, and for a sceptre, to carpe a thyselfe. The olde man was beynd helpdes, wth late examptes, as of **Pero**, who abstayned not from the murdering of hys owne moother, and made hym selfe as a laughynge stocke, vnto all the people. He remembred **Domitian**, who lette nothyng be done that he thoughte to appertayne vnto extreame Crueltye. Wherefore, wayeng wth hym selfe thiese ymages of tyrannye, he was tolled betwene hope and feare. The nygh nacion of the Germanes, encreased also hys perplexitie: for he hadde not thoroughly broughte them in subiection, but some he had taken into hys frendshyppe, and the reste, he had vanquished by force of batayle. Many of the same were escaped, and hydde them selues, for feare of the pynce. Wherefore he doubted greatly leasse, after hys deathe, they woulde rebelle agayne, in settinge at noughte the yowthe of hys Sonne: for he knewe, the nature of the barbarous people, was to be sturred wth euery small crylle. Wepinge turmented wth thiese troublelome waues of care, he caused as manye hys friendes, and kynsmen as were then in his company to repayre vnto his pcesence, and at theyr commynge togythers, haupng commaunded hys Sonne to stande before them, helpted hym selfe somewhat vpon hys pylowe, and made this oracion vnto them.

It is not to be meruayled at, that you are sozoly full and pensyfe, beholding me in this plight: for it is cion of the nature of man, to bewaile the misfortune of other. Marcus And those thinges we see wth our eyes, doo prouoke vpon hys muche more compassion and pitie. Besydes this my death be- reason is commune wth you: for in the recompence of the good wyll I haue heretofore borne you, I hope and as of duty like for a mutuall beneuolence at your handes. And at this presente it is so happened, that I must make prose, whether I haue in bayne so longe to fore exhpyted honour vnto you, (hauing you alwayes in estimation) and employed all my diligent studie towarde your welthe: And you in recompencing the

B. iij. same.

same to shewe your selues not blemished of the benesities you haue receyued: ye see my son whom your selues haue nourished, entering now the first boundes of his yowthe. And (as it were) in the swolowe and waues of incontinencie, waiting gouernours: lest ythrough ignorance, being drawen from his ryght course, he acquainte himselfe with disordered exercises. Be you therefore, (for me but one) many fathers vnto hym, in garnishing his maners, wyth prompting, and ministring holysome preceptes vnto hym: for, neyther maye the aboundaunce of treasure, satisfie the sensual lustes of tyranny, neyther can the Emperoure, be assuredly defended by the bande of his garde, enuyroning his person, except, he haue the good willes of those whom he gouerneth. For euermore they raigne longe, and peaceably; by whom no feare through cruelty, but loue through gentleness, is powored into the hartes of the Citizens: neyther they whome force constraineth, but those which of their free wylls obey, are eyther in doing or suffering, exempt fro all suspicio of flattery. The same do not at any tyme, (except they be outrageously handled) grudge, or impugne, the rule of their superiours. But it is very harde for a man, which lyueth in moost inordinate licence, to gouerne him selfe, and brydle his affections. Wherefore, yf ye wilbe Authours of well lyuing vnto him, and oftentimes admonyssh him of those thinges he presently heareth, ye shal with that one labour, bothe make hym a good pryncce vnto your selues, and all other, and also deserue the participation of our memoire, whiche with this one poynt ye maye make immortall. Whyles the Emperour Marcus was speaking thiese wordes, his vitall spirite began so suddenly to faile, that furthwith, he was enforced to cease his talke, and lyde downe into his bed agayne. Then so greate compassion, perced the hartes of all that were present, that many of them, being through sorowe almost beate their ryght senses, rapted a dolorous clamour. He hauing languished, onely a day, and a nyght after ended his lyfe: leauing behinde him, a great wante, and desyre, of hym selfe, vnto men of

that

that age, vnto their posterite, a perpetuall renowne of vertue. When the same of his death, was spreade abroad, an incredible lamentacion was, as wel amongst the hole armye selfe, as the common people: So that no man within the Romaine dominion, receiued this message, without abundaunt shedding of teares. And betwaxen the losse of him, w one accord, some called hym a good father, other some a bening Emperour, Certaine a moost valyaunt Capitayne, and many a ryghteous and moderate pryncce: And truly, there was none of them deceyued. Nowe after a fewe dayes passed, when the funerall obsequies were performed, it seemed good vnto his frendes, to byng the yonge Emperour vnto the army, that he myght, both speake vnto the souldiours, and (as the vsage of newe Emperours is) in distributynge of money largely amongst them establishe theyr myndes, (as it wer by obligacion) vnto him. It was therefore commanded, that the souldiours, accordynge to the olde custome, shoulde repaire togethers in the fieelde: After whose assemblee, The Emperour Commodus came furthe, and hauing synished the diuine ceremonies, ascended the periall throne, (for the same purpose) in the myddes of the campe erected: Where hauing about hym his fathers frendes, (who were many excellent lerned men) he spake these wordes, or muche lyke that ensue.

I am fully perswaded, that the dolour of this calamite, is common to me with you: And that you are no lesse sorrowfull, then my selfe. For during my fathers lyfe, I neuer behaued my selfe as superiour vnto you, for that he loued vs all equally, and dyd more willingly call me companion, then Sonne: because he esteemed the one, to be a name of nature, and the other, he reckened to be the participacio of vertue. And often times, he caried me in his armes, whyles I was an infante, deliuered me into your handes, and (as I might saye) gaue me wholly vnto your custodie, and deliuered. Wherefore, I doubt not, but that ye wyll exhibyte vnto me your fauour, for myne elders, oughte to repute me as their sonne: and myne equalles in age, I

C.j.

maye

may lustily call companions in armes: for even so, dyd my father loue vs all as one, & prouoked to haue vs instructed in all exercises of vertue and learning. Nowe after hym, hath fortune, gyven me for a prince vnto you: not a straunger, as some hath bene before me, nor one whiche vaunteth hym selfe of a conquered Emperre: but I was onely borne vnto you, and brought vp in the verue Impervall Palayce: And as soone as I was out of my moothers wombe, thympervall purple receyued me, in so muche that I was no sooner a man, then a Prince. Wonderinge therefore these thynges in your myndes, loue & embrace your ryghtful Emperour, not gyven, but borne vnto you. For my father is taken vp intoo the heauens, & made companion wth the Goddes: And vnto vs, the regiments of the earth, and gouernaunce of mortall causes doo appertayne. What successe and effect they shall come vnto, if resteth in your power: If ye wyll therefore, valpantly synisse the respyue of the warres, and enlarge the Romayne Emperre, vnto y great Ocean: ye shall not onely purchase vnto your selues, exceedynge muche gloire: but also, duely requyte, the memoire of our commune parente. And belene betelye, that he nowe heareth vs, and presently beholdeth what we doo: And let vs accompte our selues mooste happye, for that we haue suche a witnesse of our good dedes. As for the actes, ye haue vnto this daye, valpantly and prosperously atcheued, are attributed vnto vs, prouident gouernaunce: But what you shall hereafter notable bypunge to effecte wth me, that is to saye, wth a yonge man your Emperour, the same shall wyne vnto your selues, as it were, a peculiar fame, as well of truth, as of prowesse: whereby ye shall bypunge myne age in more estymacion, wth executing boldely oure assayes. And the Barbarous people, beyng in the begynnynge of this newe cypallitye throughe repressed, wyll not hereafter ouer boldely aduaunce theym selues, in despying my youthe: but being ones taught by theyr owne peris, wyll be restrained and kepte vnder, wth continuall

alwe

alwe and feare. When he had thus muche spoken, he distributed amonges the Souldiours, a greate summe of money, (that he myghte thereby conserue their heartes saythefull, and louynge towarde hym) and then returned into his Palayce. By a lytle space after this, all thynges were ruled by his fathers frendeg, who were at no tyme absente wth theyr prouident counsaile, gynyng hym as muche lybertie withall, as they thoughte suffycient, for the preseruacion of his healthe. But anone after, certayne of the emperours household crepte by lytle and lytle forwarde, omptyng nothyng vndone, that myghte corrupte the good dysposicion of the yonge Emperoure. For the table parasites, who measured felicity by theyr belies, and fylthye lustes, enuironed hym often tymes of the Cytye pleasures, now, receyving those thynges whiche were delectable too be heard, or seene there. And then extolling wth praple, the abundaunce of all thynges. They dysprayed besydes the bankes of Histria, as vnproufable at all seasons, for y it had no pleasant apple trees, or other fruite, & was enuyroned wth continual colde & cloudes. Wylt thou neuer, O Emperour, sayde they, leaue drynkyng of water digged, & congeled together as yce. Shal other me enioye the clere well springes, the pleasant colde of the runnyng ryuers, and the hollome ayre of Italye? By these allurynge to wantonnesse, they easely enflamed the yonge mans mynde wth vehemente desyre of those pleasures. Wherefore furthwyt: haupnge called his frendes together, he dyssembled not, that he was verue desyrous of his natyue countrey: But yet fearynge to declare, the very cause of his soden alteration of mynde, he sayned that he stood in greate doubt, leasse any ryche manne of the nobyltye, woulde take possession, of the Impervall Palayce: And thereupon gatherynge vnto hym a greate power of me, woulde, as oute of y strongest fortresse, challenge vnto hym selfe the princypall domynion of all the pyre. For sayd he amonges the people, may easely be leued a mighty & approued company of yonge men.

C. ii.

Whyles

The table of parasites.

Histria.

The historie of Herodian

The ora-
cion of
pompeia
nus vnto
Commo-
dus.

Whiles he thiese causes moued, (all the rest, hauing
their eyes cast vpon the earth, with still and sorrow-
full countenance) Pompeianus, (who in age was
the moost auncient, and had married Commodus eldest
sister) arose vp and sayed. It is no meruayle, o Sonne
and soueraigne, that you are holden wth desyre of
your countrey, for the very same desyre of leying oure
houtholdes, dothe vige and furre vs also. But we re-
presse that affection, for that thaffaires we haue here
in hande, requyre the sytse parte, and lperth vs more
vpon to dispatche. As for the pleasures of the Citie,
you shall longer enioye hereafter: And Rome is con-
tinually, where the Emperour sojourneth. Nowe to
gyue ouer the warre lately begonne, besydes that it
is shamefull, it is also very peryllous: for thereby we
minister occasion of audacitee, vnto the Barbarouse
people: who wyl thinke, that we are not departed for
cause of recreacio, but that we are fledde being daun-
ted with feare. And vnto your selfe, howe gloriouse
wyl it be, after ye haue banquished all your enemies,
and enlarged the boundes of your Empire vnto the o-
cean, to retourne to Rome wth triumphe, and ther-
in, to haue ledde bounde as captyues, the barbarouse
kynge and lordes: for truly after this sorte, in the
former worldes, did the Romaynes, were noble and
famous. There is no cause, why you shoulde feare
that your affayres in the city, are in any halarde. For
euery principall senatour is here present wth you,
and the hole army, doth before your eyes defende your
Empire: yea, and all your chiefest Treasoure, is with
vs also. The memorie besides of your father, hath esta-
blished a stedfast and perfecte beneuolence towarde
you, with all estates. When Pompeianus perswa-
ding hym to the better, had thus muche spoken, he did
somewhat at that present, repress the wyl and endea-
uour of the younge Emperour: who fearng the olde
mans saynges, hauing nothing wher with he myght
well reple, dismyssed the counsaile: promysng, that
he would more diligently at leysure, debate with hym
selfe those thynges. Yet afterwarde (hys seruantes
and

The fyrste booke

Fol. v.

and parasites callng more instantly vpon hym) he
made no further relation vnto his Counsaillors.
But (hauing sent his lotters vnto Rome, and appoin-
ted whom he thought meete, to defende the banks of
Hydrus, and restrain the streynes of the Barba-
rians) he caused furth with hym sending to be procla-
med. That they that were left behinde, diligently executed
the offices appoynted them, and wthin a lytle space,
broughte many in subiection. And some they loy-
ned by great gyftes in frendshipp vnto them. The
whiche was not verue hard to doo. For the Barba-
rour people being naturally greedy of money, and
despyers of all daungers, dothe thus farre than thing
wth inualions, and pilleng of their neighbours, or
elles for an appoynted salarie: sell they their liues. The
whiche thing Commodus perceyving, that he myght
with money wherof he had innumerable abundaunce,
purchase hym selfe securitee, and quiet he deuyed no-
thing vnto the demanders. So wth as the same
of his setting forth warre was spreade in the army, so
deuily a greate furre was amonges all the Soule-
ours, euery man desyring to retourne vnto Rome, and
affecting the pleasures of the citie, to leue theyr ene-
myes countrey. And when it was blowen abroad, by
reporde of pursuauantes and postes, that the Empe-
rour was retourning to the Citie, an incredible
wondered amonges the common people, euery man
conceiuing in hym selfe, a singular hope of the Emperours
presence, and trusting assuredly that he would folowe
his fathers steppes. Hym selfe making speade in his
journey, and passng wth a certayne seruaunte of
pouthe, in his chariot through the myddes of all the
cities, was receiued wth princely reuerence, and so-
full assemblies of the people, welcomed, as one most
acceptable, and wished for vnto them. And when he
approched nigh vnto Rome, the hole Senate, and the
Romayne commons, (eche of them conuening to pre-
sent other) crowned wth laurell, and caryng all
kynde of flowers, (that the presente season of the yere
minister) met as farre as they coulde from the ci-
ty.

the, their prince notable in the flour of youth and nobilitie of bodye. For truly, they loved him with most fervent affection, being borne and brought up among them, and then possesseing in the thirde degree chauncer and regimenter of Rome. For of his fathers he was chosen from the chiefest of the Senators. And his mother, Faustina, a princes wyfe, the daughter of Antoninus, pius, a niece by her mother unto Traian, and refers the Pedegree of her kyndred, unto Traian her grete grandfather. Of this parentage was Commodus descended, unto whome, besides the howe of his age, was given also an excellencie of bewtie, a congruent figure of body, an amiable and manly countenance, pleasant and shining beames in his eyes, and a velvet and curled heere, whiche when he came into the Sonne, did so glyster, that manye deamed the same, as he passed by them, to be sprinkled over with golden duste. Many also esteemed it a token of divinite, conjecturing that the rays about the top of his heade, were by generacion and nature given unto hym. The soft heeres besides sprang oute of his cheekes, and covered them as it were with flowes. They receyved therfore this such an Emperour, with joyfull howtes, and drawing of Garlandes, and flowers in the way as he passed. After he was entered into the Citie, visited and saluted the Temples, fyrste of Jupiter, and then of the other Goddes, and given thanks to the hole Senate, and the Pretorian Souldiours, for their fidelite observed towards hym, he went into thimperiall palayce. For a fewe yerres after this, he did honourably entrete his fathers frendes, and died their counsaile in all his affayres. Those yerres expired he committed the charge of the hole Empryre unto other, & constituted Capitaine of his garde, an Italian named Berenices a man verie experte and skillfull in warfare. The same, abusing the age of the yonge Emperour, permitted hym to be corrupted wth sensuall lusses and ruffians. And takinge upon hym selfe all charge and labour, ruled the hole Empryre. There was in the man, an insatiable thyrtle of money,

The nobilitie of Commodus.
Faustina Comodus mother.
Antoninus pius.
Hadrian Traian.
The beautie of Commodus.

Berenices

ney, so that lytle regarding what he had already gotten, he daily greatly gaped for newe conquest, and gave labouring earnestly to oppress his frendes of Commodus father, and to bringe every noble and ryche man in suspition, that thereby, the yonge man, being put in feare, and then destroyed, himselfe myght have opportunitie and power, to caule the goodes and possessions. But yet a whyle, partelle the memorie of his father, and partelle the reverence of his frendes, did restrayne Commodus. And afterwarde a certayne envious fortune, subverted his disposition, being as yet good and moderate, for thus it chanced. Lucilla was eldest wyfe unto Commodus. She was fyrste married unto the Emperour Lucius Morsus, whome Marcus had affected as his felowe in the empire: And by geving him his daughter in marriage, bounde hym with an insoluble knot of frendshyppe unto hym. But after that Lucius was deade, (the habites and tokens of dignite, remayning as yet unto Lucilla) her father married her unto Pompeianus. And Commodus neverthelesse permitted her to enioye her former estate and honour. For he suffered her to sytte in the imperiall seate in the Theatre, and to have the fyre borne before her, as the ancient blage was. But after Commodus had married Crispina, and that it was expediente, to geve the fyrste place unto the Emperours wyfe, Lucilla grudged thereat wonderfullie, rechemyng the others honour, to be her reproche, but yet knowynge, that her husbände Pompeianus, entierly loved Commodus, she durste not ones make any mocion unto hym, of invading the Empryre. Wherefore havinge proved the mynde of one Quadatus, a verie noble and ryche yonge man, (with whome also it was thought he had committed aduoutrie,) she did so greivously complayne unto hym of thimurpe she had receyved, that she enduced the yonge man, most perniciously to consente, to the vitte undoing of hym selfe and the hole Senate.

Lucilla
Commodus
Lucius Morsus.

Antonia
nus. For amonges all other of the order of Senators whiche conspired with him in this execrable enterpryse, he aduised vnto him a certayne ponge man named **Antianus**, of a blisful minde, and stout stomake, whome he perswaded to hide a dagger in his bosome, watche for convenient opportunitie and place, & there with a sodaine assaulte slea **Commodus**: As for the rest in distributing of money, **Lucilla** promised to see **Quintianus** thereto, standing in the entrepe of the Amphitheatre, (so he trusted in that darke place to be well hidden) furth with drew oute the dagger, and tyed with a loude voyce vnto **Commodus**, sayinge: This dothe the Senate sende vnto thee. Whiles he spake these wordes, he was apprehended by the Emperours Garde, and receiued conigne punishment for his madness: being by his owne sondres, the **Author** of theschewing bys intschete, his entent being rather opened then accomplished. This too was the spryng and chiefest occasion of **Commodus** hatred against the Senate. For these wordes had so perced his heart, that he reputed them all his enemyes, the voyce of the ponge man, which wold haue slaine him; stickynge continually in his memorie. **Perennes** (not omittinge, soo greate an occasion) perswaded the Emperour, to put vnto deathe, euery one of the principall malefactours, and suffer not one of them to remayne a lyue. Into whose possessions, hym selfe makinge inuasion, became without difficultie, the ryche of all men in those dayes. And after **Perennes** had diligently made inquisition of the sayd Treason, the very spyer of **Commodus**, with all the Coniurators, and all other (whiche any suspicion had caused to be apprehended,) were put vnto deathe. Those ponge ones dispatched oute of the waye, who the ponge Emperour stode in awe of: and who loued hym with a certayne fatherly affection, **Perennes** roke vpo him the iurisdiction of the Emperours person: And hauing obtained very muche auctorite, compassed incontinently in his mynde the occupieng of the empire selfe. And for this purpose he enduced **Commodus**, to constitute hym

sonnes yonge men, beyng capitaynes ouer thelyzian armies. He gathered together a wonderfull grete some of money that he myght with ryche bribes and gistes alienate the Pretorian Souldiours fro the Emperour. His Sonnes also, priuely leuied their power, to the entent, that alioone as their father **Perennes** had slaine **Commodus**, they woulde by violence take the dominion and rule vpon them. But this conspiracye, was bewrayed by a wonderfull and incredible meane. The Romaines vsed to celebrate certayne renes displates in the honour of **Iupiter Capitoline**, wherunto assembled so grete a multitude of people, as is meete to resorte at any notable shewe to such a mighty Cite. The Emperour is also accustomed to beholde the same plaies, and to sit in the Theatre with the highe Priestes, whome the order doth verely appoynt. Now when **Commodus** late in the Emperiall Throne, earnestly beholding the gorgeous preparacions for the Tragedies, and when the Theatre was replenished with people, euery mans place according to his estate beyng appoynted him: Sodeinly, before any thing was done or spoke on the scaffoldes, one in the habite of a Philosopher, bering in his hande a clubbe, and halfe naked, hauing a scrippe hanging downe fro his sholder, came furth in a Chariot: And stayeng in the myddes of the scaffold, wth his hande commaunded silence, and then sayed. This is no tyme of playe (O **Commodus**) neyther to behold pageauntes, for the Sworde of **Perennes** is hanging ouer thy sholders, and except thou take good heade, to auoyde it, the daunger is not imminent but present, and thou arte vndone: for hym selfe here present, dothe leuue power and money agaynst thee. And hym Sonnes doe solicite thelyzian armies to rebellion. Whiche if thou do not preuente, thou arte but deade. With these wordes, (whether the man were sturred therunto with any diuine inspiration, or beyng but symple, was so bolde to purchase hym selfe therby renowne, or elles hoped to obtayne some grete rewarde of the Emperour) truly he dysmayed hym. The reste whyche were present also, (althoughe they

The historie of Herodian

they conjectured that it was not for nought spoken yet did they sayne not to giue credite vnto it. And Perennes commaunded the man further to be apprehended and as a furious and yole talkatiue felowe to be burned. This rewarde had he for hys intemperate lybertye. but they whych seemed to fauour Commodus, and had tofore detested Perennes, as a man of intollerable pryde, haupnge gotten a conueniente tyme, laboured wpth accusacions, too bypunge hym out of receypte wpth themperour. And truely, so muste it come to passe, that Commodus should escapethis Treason, And Perennes with hys sonnes be for they demerites woorthely rewarded. For no longe while after, certayne Souldiours had conueyed priuely from Perennes eldest Sonne, sundrye pieces of moneye, coyned wpth the stampe of hys picture: And those, vntwares of Perennes (although he wer principal Magistrate) they deliuered vnto Commodus. And hauing opened thole cyrcumstaunce of the pretended Treason, were with grete gistes recompenced. The night folowynge were sent certayne from Commodus, to strike off Perennes head, who was ignorant of al this busines, and at that Instant lest looked for any suche matter. That done, the same executyoners, (as they were commaunded) furthwpyth wente vnto hys Son, and making very hasty speede, preuented the rumoure of those thynge that were done at Rome. At they commynge vnto hym, they deliuered hym frendlie letters from theperour, the which puttyng hym in great hope, willed hym to retorne vnto Rome: wherby he was ignorant of all the dyspse, and finally of his fathers happe. For some of the messengers, tolde hym that he was called alsoo for by hys father, who (they sayde) woulde haue written vntoo him likewise, yf he had not supposed, y he would suffyciently regarde themperours letters. The porage man beleued it, and although he grudged somewhat that his enterpryse was thus interrupted, yet assyng hym selfe, in his fathers myghte & auctoritie (whome he thoughte too be as yet in prosperous estate,) he prepared him selfe to retourne wpth them.

The
death of
Perennes

But

The firste booke.

Fol. viii.

But assoone as he approached the borders of Italie, he was slayne by them vnto whome the charge of therecutyon was commytted. Thys ende had the father & the Sonne. After whom Commodus appointed. y. gouernours, thynkynge it to be more sure, not to commyt so great an auctorite vnto one man alone: but deuinding y same in y. partes, make it by y mean, the more weake to rebell against the prince. But no long time after, there were other Treasons conspyred agaynst hym in this maner. There was a certayne Souldiour named Paternus, bolde in enterprysing many famous factes. The same sodeinly forsaking y Campe and adioynng into hys followshyp certayne of his companyons, gathered in a thorte space an huge multitude of desperate rustynes. First he destroyed byllages and cornfeldes, and than haupng gotten a great Summe of moneye, he toynd dayly more bacabondes vnto hym, and by promysynge them greate rewarde, & calling them to the deuilion of the pray, he brought the matter vnto suche poynt, that they seemed to haue the auctorite, not of theues, but of iuste enemyes. For they occupied great Cities, and therein brake y common gaoles, and toke out of prysen wthoute respectte all offenders, whome through that release and benefyte, they annexed vnto them. Then they spoyled wpth inuasyons all Fraunce and Spayne, and wha they had taken any great Citie, they would ransake burne and utterly deface the same and than departe. Whercof when Commodus had knowledge, he sente letters not wantynge angry checkes, vnto the lieutenantes of the Countreyes there aboutes, reproouynge they cowardyse, and therwpyth commaundyng them to leuie an armye, for y subduynge of those rebellious bacabondes. Which thing when the Rustynes knew, they thought it best to depart from those Countreyes. Wherfore priuely by secrete hypaches and vniouwen wayes, they came into Italie, where Paternus consulted wpth his complices, of thynualion of thempryre, and other weyghbye affayres. For sayng all thyn

A newe
conspira
cy.
Pater
nus.

D. y.

ges hithere

ges hytherunto had prospered wyth hym beyond his expectacyon, he determyned to attempt some notable enterpryse, or at the least wyle, yf it chaunced amisse, too dye not obscurelye or like a coward. But yet perceiving hym selfe, not to have so greate a power, as should suffice to resist Commodus, wyth an appoynted and chosen armye, (for he knew that Commodus was well beloved of the Romayne people and men of armes) he concluded to worke his seate by crafty conueyance. And therefore Inuented thys wyle. In the begynnyng of the sprynge tyme, vpon an appoynted holy day, y Romaynes bled to celebrate a poynte vnto y mother of y Godes. In y solempnitie, the best of euerye mans ryches, and Jewelles, and all thimperall ornamentes, (whych are eyther for matter or worke worthy to be looked on) are wont to be brought furthe, before the Goddesse. And euerye where a licence too playe, is graunted all men, and too take vpon them the persones of whom it liketh eche man best. There is no magistratre or offyter, but he is there represented in the counterfaytynge of theyr persones by such as lyketh so to doo: so that a man can not rashly discern the true parson from the dysguysed. Thys dyd Paternus reckon to be a conueniente tyme for the close atcheuyng of hys trayterous enterpryse. Trustyng assuredlye, yf him selfe toke vpon hym the person of one of theemperours garde, and armyng hys confederates after the same sorte, mingle them selues amonges the spearmen, wherebye they shoulde be thought to be of theemperours retynewe, no man forsyng the matter) wyth a sodeyne assaulte to slea Commodus. But beyng betrayed by certayne of hys adherentes that entered intoo the Cytie wyth hym, (who grudged that they shoulde hereafter accept him not as a Souldioure theyr companion, but as theyr prynce) before the festiual day were nygh, he was taken and beheaded: and all the residue of the same facio, were punished w condigne tormetes of death. Powe after the sacrifice was finished, Commodus did with

Whether
of Water
hus.

thankesge

thankesgeuing passe furthe the feast of the Goddesse: yea and the people beyng Ioyfull for the preseruacyon of theyr Emperour, celebrated meryly that daye. But what the reason is, wherefore the Romaynes do so muche honoure this Goddesse, it semeth not amysse for me to make mencion of it, as I haue learnid out of Histories, especially because that matter is vnknewen vnto moost of the Greekes. The same Image therefore (as they sape) came downe from heauen, no certayntie remainyng of what metall, or by what artificer it was wrought: yea they constantly beleaue, it was neuer made with manes handes. Therofore, they affirme, that it fell downe from heauen into a certain fvelde of Phrygia, the whiche they coniecture to haue the name Pessuntis, (by the fall of the same Image) put vpon it. For there they sape, it appeared fyrste. But do I fynde amonges other authors, that there be twene Iulus the Phrygian, and Tantalus the Lydian. The bat- was foughten the batayle, (either bego for the way or rather for y rauynyng of Canimedes. And when they had longe foughten, wyth equall strenght, and verie many on bothe sydes slayne) that the name was geuen vnto the fvelde by that calamite. There also (the report is) that Canimedes beyng drawen to and fro by the handes of his brother and loutre, was depriued of hys anlyfe: And beyng taken away, a fable was wrought for the comfort of his loutre, that he was endowid by Jupiter hys rauisher wyth many byante honours. In that fælde Pessuntis, (whereof I haue spoken) dyd the Phrygians in tymes passe worshyppe, and celebrate the ceremonies of the infernall Goddes even at the ryuer of Gallus, of the whiche the women of the Goddesse are surnamed. But when the Romayne Empryre encreased, (an Oracle beyng receyued that the Empryre shoulde be augmented to the vttermoste, yf the Romaynes woulde transporte the Pessuntian Goddesse vnto them.) There were Embassadors sente into Phrygia, too requyre the statue of the Goddesse, the whiche was easily graunted vnto theym, because they sape that the Romaynes

Presum-
tis.

The ry-
uer Gal-
lus.

The Pe-
ssuntian
Goddesse

Uelal
virgin

The pe
silence

were of kyndred vnto the Phrygians, beyng descended of Aeneas the same cuntrey manne. When as therefore, they hadde broughte the ymage in shyppe vnto the verye mouth of Tiberis, whyche the Romaynes then used in steade of a hauē, sodeynly with a certayne diuine power, the shyppe stode faste, neither coude it be remoued wyth anye strengthe of the people drawynge at it, vntyll a Vestall byrgin came thither. The same beyng sclaudered, that she had deflowred her virginitye, (whiche oughte euermore to be inuolatelye preserved) fearyng condempnation, instantlye intreated the people, that they woulde commytte the iudgemente of her, vnto the Pelynnician Goddesse. That ones obtayned, she bounde the masse of the shyppe wyth her gyrdell, mooste humbly desyringe, that yf the Goddes knewe her an vncorrupte virgyn, she woulde commaunde the shyppe to come forwarde. And when she hadde so sayde, she drew the gyrdell in her hande, and the shyppe beganne to folowe. So dyd the Romaynes together wonder at the manifest diuinitie of the God heade, and the innocencie of the virgyn. But this much haue I hyther vnto treated of the Pelynnician Goddes, peraduenture somewhat more tediouslye then it behoued, but yet lyke to bypge no vnprofytable knowledge vnto them that are not thoroughlye skylfull in all the Romayne affayres. Nowe Commodus (hauyng escaped the treason of Paternus, dyd wyth a greater Garde strengthen hym selfe, and came verve sealdome abrode, consumed mooste parte of the tyme in the Suburbes, or in hys Principall Manours farre from the Cyte, and bitterlye abstayned from syttinge in iudgemente, and all Imperyall actes. At the same tyme, a wonderfull plage be-
ed all Italie: but it was mooste furiose in the cyte of Rome, as in a place replenshed wyth people, and receauynge straungers from all parties of the worlde. Whereby there happened a meruailous grete moeyne of menne and beastes. Then Commodus

modus departed vnto Laurentum, (for so had some connyng Physicians counseyled hym) because it was a more coude Kegyōn, and shadowed wyth many woodes of Laurell, of whome also the Countrey hathe hys name. For they sayde that the sauoure of the Laurelles, and the pleasauntnesse of the shadowes, dyd greaue praye to the auoydēge of the contagion of the pye. And therefore gainst in the Cyte selfe, by the Physicians aduysmentes, the people manye stopped theyr eares and noses wyth sweete lence, oynementes, and used dayly delectable vapors and perfumes, that the pores of the senses shoulde not admytte into them anye pestiferouse smell, and yf they receyued anye, that the perfumes wyth a greater strengthe shoulde banquyssh the same. But neuerthelesse the sycknes encreased, destroyng euery where bothe men and cattell. Pea there dyd also a grete famyne bere and oppresse the Cyte, by this occasion. There was a certayne Phrygian named Cleander, of that sorte of menne that are soude openly by Cyters: The same beyng put to seruyce Cleander in the Emperours house, encreased gretefullye in fauoure wyth Commodus, and was enhaunsed vnto so hygh dignytie, that he alone obtayned the custodie of the Emperours parson, the charge of hys Chamber, and the gouernaunce of hys Garde. Kychelle and pryde dyd besydes surre hym to hope of Chemyre. Wherefore hauyng gathered together a grete somme of money, he boughte a wonderfull quantyte of wheate, and the same he hadde costelye thutte by trustyng that he shoulde wynde the hartes of the people and the armye, yf that he releued wyth large gyftes, those that before were in grete penurye of necessarye foode. He had also buylded a verve large schole for exercyses, and many common bathes, that he myght by that meanes allure the people vnto hym. But the Romaynes were offended wyth hym before, imputyng all the cause of thys dearethe vnto hym onely.

Theatre

And detestling him, as man vnfaciable of ryche, the first assembled by embushmentes vnto the Theaters, and afterwarde Commodus beyng in the Suburbes, suddenly they came all thither, wryth huge clamors, deuouring Cleander vnto death, and when the hoie Suburbes were fylled with noyse and tumulte, Commodus him selfe was at his accustomed pleasures in an upper chamber, ignorant of all that was done, Cleander perdy had so prouided sodenly beyonde all mens expectation: the Emperours hoisemen armed brasse furthe with violence by the commaundement of Cleander, douring downe and wounding euery man they met. The people beyng on foote, & without weapon, were not able to sustayne the brunte of the hoisemen: wherefore with hasty fleynge they retred into the Cytie, where many of them were destroyed, not onely those whome the hoisemen slewe wryth weapon, but also they whome the hoises had wryth theyr seate troden downe, & they that fought eyther in the pree of the forester, or elles amonge the hoises. The hoisemen so pursuing them without any impediment vnto the gates of the Cytie, destroyed a grette parte of the people. But they that remayned within, knowing the calamitie of theyr frendes without, shutte theyr doores and gatte vp into the rofes, and toppes of their houses, and throwe downe vpon the hoisemen bothe stones and toles. Ther by was the fortune sodenly chaunged, when no hoiseman durste at that presente sturue, all the people fighting safely from aboue against the. Wherefore many of them beyng wounded when they coude no longer endure, turned their backs and fled: many of them were also slaine throughe the contynual and thicke falling of weapons, and many stricken from theyr hoises, whiche sounded amongs the stones that were throwen downe. Mea, and the footemen whiche had stations within the cyte, came to rescue the people against the hoisemen, whome they utterly destroyed. And although this were a Cyple batayle, yet durste no man for feare of Cleanders power declare it vnto Commodus, vntyll his eldest Syster named

med Fadilla vnto hym (for the approachynge vnto his presence was ease for hys Syster) wryth her heare loose sel down on her knees, deuoured wryth a mourning garmente, and sayde. Cruely (O Prynce) whyles ye lye here in peace, ye are in extreame peryll. And we that are of your bloude are almooste vndone. The people of Rome are destroyed. The most parte of your armie is consumed. And those thynges we thought not to suffre of Barbariens, the same doth our own household seruantes vnto vs. And they vpon whom you haue bestowed mooste bountyfull benefytes, the same are youre moost extreame enemyes. Cleander hath armed the people and shouldours against you, amonges whome he is of some abhorred, and of some entyrelly beloued. Yet are they both in armes, do comyt murdres wrythin them selues, and fyll Rome with Cyple bloude. But vpon oure neckes wryll the myserie of bothe companyes lyghte, excepte you do deliuer vnto death wryth all haste, a mooste pernyccious & wrycked seruante, whych hath bene aucthour of so gret a calamitie vnto them already, and entenderth shortly to be so vnto vs. Whyles she thus sayde, she rente her clothes, and manye that were presente, haupnge taken courage of the womans woordes, dyd put Commodus in feare also. He beyng amased, and dreading the daunger, not as Imynente, but presente, commaunded Cleander to be called hastily vnto hym, not knowynge anye certayntye, but yet suspectynge that somewhat was tolde themperoure. And as he came before hym, theemperoure commaunded hym too be apprehended, and too haue hys head strycken of: And beyng set vpon a speare too be carped aboute. Knowynge that he shoulde shewe vnto the people a pleasure and desyred syghte. Thus was hys myserie appeased, and the syghte on eyther syde asswaged. For the shouldours (when they sawe him dead, for whom they fought) feared the indignacyon of the Emperour, whom they perceiued too be deluded, and that nothing was done by hys commaundement. The people on thother parte accounted the selues satisfied

C. i.

wryth

wyth the death of the begynner of the mischief. The chylde also of Cleander, (for he had two sonnes) & all his frendes were at one tyme slayne, and theyr bodies being drawen through the Citie, and most filthy ordered, were at the last throwen into the common synkes of the Citie. This was the ende of Cleanders deschenies. And in hym onely mans nature, can (as I might say) boldly bragge, that a man may be aduanced, from moste vile and lowe estate, vnto the hyghest tye of dignitie, and being soo exalted, fall downe in the leaste and sodayne momente of fortune. Then Commodus, (althoughe he feared that the people would moue some newe tumulte againste hym) yet by his frendes perswasions, retourned into the Citie. And being receyued wyth ioyfull shoutes and assemblies of people, entered into thimperial palayce. And certainly so many perylls beinge passe, he began from thencefurthe to trust no creature: but to destroy now this, & now that man, gynnyng credyte vnto euery false accusatyon. He toke besides into his frendshipp, no man in whome was any vertue remaynyng, but dyd withdraue his mynde equallye from all good studie. For the vnbrydeled lustes of the bodye, dyd bothe day and night oppresse him wyth most greuous bondage. He remoued as a spie from his gate, euery man whom eyther goodnes, or any meane and honest qualitie, did beautifie. But slaues and suche as vsed most filthy maners, hadde hym as wholly addicted vnto them. He vsed also aboute measure cartynge and sleing of beastes. For the which exercyses, the flattering Parasites extolled him with fame of fortitude. There by he behaued him selfe in those thynges more dishonestly, then became a sober & prudent Prince. At that season were apparaunte in the skye, certayne prodigious tokens. For starres appeared continually by daye lycht, and manye of them beyng stretched out in lengthe, seemed too hange in the myddes of the ayre. Beastes besydes of all kynde were broughte furthe, not obseruynge theyr nature, wyth monstrous shape of bodye, and membes nothyng agree-

The begynninge of Commodus tyrannye.

Carting.

Prodigious tokens in the ayre.

able. But the greatest calamitie partely brought present doloure, and especyally after ward wyth most miserable coniecture, dyd put all men in feare. For when there had neyther anye shoures or cloudes, sayunge onely a lytle earthquake preceeded (whether it were by chaunce wyth lychtenynge in the nyghte, or elles wyth anye fyre kyndeled in the earthe) the hole Temple of peace was sodaynely burnte. The Temple whiche worke, of all other in the Cytye was greateste and mooste beautifull, and of all the Temples mooste ryche, and gorgeouslye buylde, and adorned wyth muche golde and syluer. For almoste euery man broughte his substaunce thither, as into a treasoury. And thereby the fyre so ragynge in the nyghte, broughte manye that were riche into extream pouerty. Wherefore all men bewayled the common calamitie openly, and euery man lamented his owne losse pryuately. When all the Temple was consumed, bearyng manye the beautifullest buildinges of the Citie were enflamed with fyre also. Amonges the which the temple of Vesta was one, so that the Palladiū was sene, the which the Romaynes do chiefly worship and kepe secrete, beyng broughte (as they saye) from Troie, and at that time firste sythens it came into Italye, sene of all men. For the Vestall Virgines, hauing with muche difficultye saued it, carped it through a crete named Sacra bia, vnto the myperours palayce. Many the goodlyest partes besydes of the Citie were burned. And the fyre ragynge many daies was not ceased, befoze that sodayne shoures quenched it. Wherefore all men that time referred the hole matter vnto the Goddes, by whose wil they thought the fyre to be begon and ended, interpreting warres (which did ensue) to be signified by the burning of the Temple of Peace. The which coniecture of things the hap did after ward verifie. For the Citie being vexed with manye greuous discōmodities, the people dyd not (as they were wonte) beholde Commodus beneuolently, but euery one imputed the cause of theyr myserye vnto his dissolute and pernyciouse lyces,

The Temple of Vesta. The image of Pallas. Vestal virgins.

The historie of Herodian.

for his wickednesse was not hydden from them neyther wolde he it shoulde be kept close. But those thinges that were in his house committed, not withoute infamye, the same he feared not to blase and blowe abroad. He wared so insolent, that he abandoned the name of his father, and for Commodus the sonne of Marcus, commaunded himself to be called Hercules the son of Jupiter. And leuing aparte the apparayle of the Romayne princes, he ware a Lions skinne, bearing in hys hande a clubbe, and couered hymselfe with purple, and clothes woven with golde, not withoute the derpsion of all men. For in that one garment, he represented the wantonnesse of women, & the prouesse of noble men. Thus did he daily behaue himself. He also chaūged the names of y^e monethes, & for their auncient tytles, apoynted them new of his owne surname, of the whiche manye were referred vnto Hercules, as vnto one mooste payssaunt. He caused also Images to be erected vnto hym throughout the Cyte, and amonges them, one in the Courte of the Senate, the whiche helde a bowe bent, that the Images themselves, shoulde shewe terrors and manaces. The which Image the Senate after his death pulled downe, and for it erected agayne the Image of Iybertye. But Commodus (when he coulde not aswage and bydle hymselfe,) taking vppon him to shew furth pageantes vnto the people, promysed that he would with his owne handes, slea before them all kynde of wyldc beastes, & stryue by a synguler contencion, with euery valiaunt younge man. When the rumoz of these tryalles was spreadde abroad, there assembled people out of all Italy, and other nighe nacions to behold that syght. Whiche they had neuer before seane, nether by talke herde of. For his hande was reported to be so stedfaste, that what so euer he had throwen or shotte at wyth darte or arrowe, the same wold he assuredly strycke. And he retayned daily about him mooste approued archers of Parthia, & Pumpdyane syngers, all the which hym selfe in cunnynge farre excelled. Nowe when the daye of this Pageande was come, there was buylded in the myddes

The
Agpytee of
Commo-
dus.
Parthies
& Pumi-
midians.

The synste booke.

Fol.xlii.

myddes of the Amphitheater, a gallerie for Commodus. In the which he myght runne rounde about, lest that syghting beneth with the beastes, he shoulde be in daūger. But by casting his dartes frō aboue, as oute of a safe place, he shoulde rather shew his cunning of throwyng then any valiaūnesse. In pursuynge them he strake hartes and hyndes, and other horned beastes besydes bulles, and preuenting the with a swyfte course ouerthrewe them, by mooste assured strokes. The Lyons and Wāthers wyth other fierce beastes of that kynde, runnyng rounde aboute he slewe with dartes from aboue, so that no man saw the seconde darte throwen at any of them, nor any woude but that was deadly. For as soone as the beast ones sturred, he wounded him eyther in the foreheade, or at the hart, delyng none other scope, nor appoyntinge to throwe at anye other parte of the bodye, so that the beaste wyth the verpe stroke, was beraste hys lyfe. There were beastes besydes gotten from all partes of the earthe. And the dyd we beholde with oure eyes, those thinges we meruayled at in paynting. For oute of India & Ethyope, and out of the South and Northe, (what so euer were knownen in the former worldes,) the same dyd he bothe shew furthe, and slea at one tyme, euery man beyng abashed, at hys so stedfaste a hande, and at the dartes neuer saylyng stroke. He also stroke wyth dartes, Dystriches of Maloytany, the whiche (thoughe the swyftnes of their feate, and as it were wyth sayle of their winges) ranne very swyfly touching the toppes of their neckes, & there withall strikenge of their beades, and the hinder parte of the necke (wher the stroke lighted) beyng cūte of, they woude a lytle whyle continue the y^e course, as though they were yet lyuynge. And a Wāther (the which hauing with a very behemēt course ouertaken a man) thruste into the Theater (seamed redy to deuoure hym) he woude so suddenly that the beaste beyng kylled, he preserved the man, preuentynge the edge of her teathe, wyth the sharpe hedde of hys darte. He also slewe an hundreth Lyons, brought furthe of a caue with like many strokes, their bodies

Lions &
Wāthers

Inde &
Ethyope

C.ii.

bodies so layde in order, that they myghte easely be nombred, no darte beyng throwen in bayne. These thynges therfore that were hytherunto done (althoughe they seemid binnate for a Prynce) yet because they declared a certayne fortitude and cunningge deserved commendacion of the people. But when he enteryd naked into the Amphitheater, and wearynge harnesse supplied the nombze of the sworde players, then appeared a lamentable syghte to the Romaynes, that theyr noble Emperour, after so manye triumphes of hys father and auncestours, dyd not onely beare armes appertaynyng to the Emperre agaynst beasts, but dyd also spotte the chiefeste dignitie wth mooste fylthy apparell. In syghtyng he easely conuynced hys equalles, wthoute beyng ones wounded, euery manne wth drawyng hys force, and acknowlegyng hym rather an Emperoure then a sworde player. And he fell into that furve that he intended to forsake the Impervall Courte, and to remoue into the schole of defence. Neyther suffered he hym selfe anye more to be named Hercules, haupnge adopted the name of an excellent sworde player, the whyche a lytle before dyed. Hea haupnge taken the heade from the Colossus greate Image called Colossus that represented the symilitude of the Sonne, (beyng verie moche worshipped of the Romaynes) he putte thereon the picture of hys owne heade, and wrote at the foote thereof, not hys accustomed tytles of the Emperre and hys father, but for the name of Germanyn, he put in the banquysher of a thousande Maysters of defence. But it was requysyte, he shoulde ones synne by his madnesse, and the Cytye he deliuered from hys Tyrannye. And that in the begynnyng of the yere, the whiche daye the Romaynes holde verie solempne, dedicatyng it vnto Janus the aunciente God of Saturne Italye. Of the whiche Regione, they reported Saturnus (beyng expelled by hys sonne Jupiter) to be a

Janus.

Saturne

Jupiter,

stranger,

stranger, and bicause that he there hydde hym selfe, the name of Latium to be geue vnto it. Wherfore the Romaynes do fyrste celebrate, after theyr custome the feastes of Saturnus, and then the begynnyng of the yere. The Image of this God is wroughte with two faces, as of hym by whome the yere begynneth, and in whome the yere endyth. When the Cite helde (as I sayd) this daye with solempnitye, in the whiche the Romaynes do sende one to an other newe yeres giftes, and all sortes of presentes, and the magistrates respyced wth bewtyfull scarlette, (all menne wth gladnesse celebratinge the same daye) Commodus determyned to come abroade, not oute of the Emperours palace (as the olde vsage was) but oute of the berpe schole of defence. And for gorgeous apparayle and Impervall purple to go armed in the companye of the Romayne people. Whiche hys counsell, when he hadde declared vnto Martia one of hys concubynes, (vnto whome he opened the greatest partes of hys secrettes and esteemed her almoste as hys wyfe so that all honours sauyng the fyre were bozne before her as Emperesse) the woman haupnge perceaued hys so dyshoneste entente, fell vpon her knees before hym, incessantly despyng hym wth manye teares that he woulde not lustre the Maiesty of the Romayne Emperre to be despyled, or committe hym selfe so daungerously vnto myscheuouse and desperate personnes. But when she coulde nothynge availe she departed wepyng. And he haupnge called vnto hym the Capytayne of hys armye named Letus, and Electus hys Chamberlayne, commaunded them to prepare all thynges for hys lodgyng the same nyghte in the schole of defence, that he myght in the mornyng goe from thence to sacrefyce, and shewe himselfe armed vnto the people of Rome. They endeuoured wth manye intercessions to dissuade hym from enterprysyng anye thyng vndecente to a Prynce. But Commodus chauffed wth anger

Latium.

Saturnus

feast

Cite

newe

respyced

gladnesse

celebratinge

Emperours

palace

companye

concubynes

Martia

one of

Commodus

concubynes

Emperesse

perceaued

dyshoneste

entente

fell vpon

her knees

before hym

incessantly

despyng

hym wth

many teares

that he

woulde not

lustre the

Maiesty

of the

Romayne

Emperre

to be

despyled,

or

committe

hym

selfe

so

daungerously

vnto

myscheuouse

and

desperate

personnes.

But

when

she

coulde

nothyng

e

vaile

she

departed

wepyng.

And

he

haupnge

called

vnto

hym

the

Capytayne

of

hys

armye

named

Letus,

and

Electus

hys

Chamberlayne,

commaun-

ded

them

to

prepare

all

thynges

for

hys

lodgyng

the

same

nyghte

in

the

schole

of

defence,

that

he

myght

in

the

mornyng

goe

from

thence

to

sacrefyce,

and

shewe

himselfe

armed

vnto

the

people

of

Rome.

They

endeuoured

wth

many

intercessions

to

dissuade

hym

from

enterprysyng

any

thyng

vndecente

to

a

Prynce.

But

Commodus

chauffed

wth

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

anger

The Historie of Herodian

Philocom-
modus.

anger (hauing commanded them to anoyde hys presence) returned into hys chambze that he myghte, (as he was accustomed) slepe at noone. And there takyng into hys handes a thynne boke made of the bark of a tree and folowyng to epyther syde, he wrote in the same all those he intended to slea the same night. Of whom Martia was fyrste, and nexte vnto her Letus and Electus, and after them a greates number of those that bare moost rule in the Senate. For he determined to destroye all tholde men that were hys fathers frendes (least they aucthoritye shoulde hynder hys wickednes) and to dystribute their goodes amonges y^e Souldoyours and sword players, y^e the one company shoulde wyth strengthe defende hym, and thother wyth pleasures delyte hym. The same boke so wyrtten he threwe downe on hys bedde, not suspectyng that anye man woulde enter into the chamber. But there was a pyle Woye, yet of the sorte of theym, that beyng clothed wyth no garmentes, sauynge suche as are decked with golde and pzeppouse stonys are wonte too be the pleasures of euerye delicate Romayne. The same Woye was so entyrelve beloued of Commodus, that he often tymes laye wyth hym, and was called Phylocommodus (the name it selfe declaryng the Dynces affection). Thys chylde by chaunce playynge (whan Commodus was occupied in the bayne and rpyottinge) entered into the chambze, and takynge the booke in hys hande to playe wythall, wente oute of the doores, and by chaunce mette wyth Martia, who for that she loued the Woye, fyrste embraced and kyssed him and toke the booke oute of hys hande, fearynge least the chylde shoulde through his infancie, vntwares empayre thynges of Importaunce. Afterwarde knowynge the hande of Commodus, and moued wyth desyre too reade it, when she perceyued the pernyccyouse ententes therein contayned, and her selfe to be fyrst mencioned, Letus wyth Electus to folowe, and finally so great a murdre of others lykely to ensue, she inwardly lamented sayynge. Ah Commodus, are these the rewardes of frendshyp and loue? Haue I thus deserued of the affe-

I haue

The first boke.

Fol. xy.

I haue so many peres abydden thy checkes and dydkennes: But these thynges shall not so prospere wyth the vndyscrete and drunken person agaynst a sober & well aduysed woman. When she had thus spoken she called Electus (wyth whome she was accustomed to talke samplarelye, because he was the Emperours Chamberlayne, and wyth hym she was also supposyd to haue carnall compayne) and deliuered the boke vnto hym, sayynge. Beholde Electus what banquet we shoulde haue bene at this nyght folowyng. He beyng assayed wyth the recovynge of it (for he was an Egiptyan borne, stout, sumptuous, and quykelye styred to anger) sent the boke closely sealed by a trusty frend of hys vnto Letus to reade. The whych also abashed wyth it, came furth wyth vnto Martia, sepyng that he woulde consulte wyth her, concernynge the preparation in the schole of defence as the Emperour had commaunded. Wrynge therefore thys glose, they determined to doo, or suffre somethynge out of hande, knowynge that there was no tyme of deferrynge the matter. They consented at laste that the feate shoulde be wroughte by payson. The whych Martia tooke vpon her to mynister spredelye. For she was wonte too prepare dynke for hym, and to gyue hym the cuppe that it myghte be thoughte more sweeter beyng deliuered from hys louer. She gaue vnto hym therefore as he came from the bayne payson myngled wyth berye pleasaunte wyne in a goblet. And he hauing caughte a thyrste in wasshynge hym selfe and hunteynge, drank raskelye the dynke as of custome proffered vnto him. Wherewyth beyng immediatlye troubled wyth atche in hys heade and desyrous of sleape, (supposynge it came by labour,) gaue hym selfe to rest, Electus and Martia commaunded incontynentelye euerye man to departe to hys owne house, leasse they shoulde dysturbe the Emperoure hauinge nede of sleape, whych he was accustomed also to doo at other tymes throughe Immoderate drunkennes. For when he bathed him self, or elles sell to banquetynge, he kepte no certayne tyme of sleape.

F. i.

The

Parcyl-
lus.
Commo-
dus strā-
gled to
death.

The sensualities risinge and muche differynge one from another, so constrained the man, (yea sometyme bnylling) to serue the. Whā he had for a smal tyme risked him selfe, and the vehemency of the popson was now entered his stomake and belye, a gidines cōbzed his head, and bemynginge furthwyt folowed, cyther throughe the meat y he had befoze largely eaten, or the drynkyng of muche wyne that resyffed the popson, or elles throughe the blage that Princes obserue in taking of medicines befoze they eate any meat, for feare of poysonyng. But when he had vomited ver y muche, they fearynge leasse all the venyme beyng auoyded, he would thereby recouer, and the commaund the ym al- togyther to be slayne, perswaded for a great reward a certayne bolde and stoute yonge man named Parcyl- lus, to strangle him in hys Chaumber. Thys ende of life had Commodus, when he hadde raigned, after his father in the Emppre. xiii. yerres. A mā of al other Emperours most noble, & of all men in y age the most beautifull. But too speake of his prowes & fortitude he might in y be preferred to any other, especyallye in sure strykyng that he had thowen at. Peruerthels he defyled (as befoze is tolde) all the state of hys lyfe wpyth abhomynable byces.

The ende of the fyrst booke.

The Argumente of the seconde booke.

In the second booke is declared how Pertinar was chosen Emperour, howe longe time he raigned, & how he was slaine by the men of armes (whiche solde themppre after wardes vnto Iulianus) How Seuerus became Emperoure by the delays of Piger. And howe Iulianus was slayne, and the death of Pertinax reuenged by Seuerus.

(*) (*) (*)

The



After that Commodus was strangled (as we haue in the former Booke declared) the murderers intending to cō- ceale the facte, and to de- ceauē y Emperours garde, deliuered the body wrapped in an olde couerlet, vnto. ii. trustie and saythfull seruā- tes to cary furthe of the Pa- lace, as it were some stuffe that pestered the chambze.

And they that bare it passed throughe the myddes of the watchemen, of the whiche some were dzyonke and slepte, letting their halberdes fall out of theyr handes. The other whiche were awake, neglected the sardell whyche they supposed not to appertaigne vnto theyr charge. Then they sente the princes bodye, (thus con- ueyed by stealth, and in the nyghte layde in a wagon) vnto a place named Aristeus. This ended, Letus, Elec- tus, and Partia, after they had longe consulted what was beste to be donne, at the laste concluded to spzeade a rumor of his deathe, that he sodenlye fell into an Appoplexie. The which byuite they knew wold soone be credyted, because it was euidently knowen that he oftentimes accustomed to stuffe him selfe with immo- derate superfluitie of metes. But fynde of all it seemed good vnto them, to chose for Emperour some aged, re- uerende, and modest personē, by whome themselves myghte be in safetie and all other exempt from cruell tyrannye. And haupng longe consulted they founde no man so worthy as Pertinax. This Pertinax was an Italian borne, famous at home & abroad throughe his valyaunte actes, & many folde victories obtayned againste the Germanyes, & Barbaryens of the Dyz- ente,

Appo-
plexie.

Pertin-
ax.

F. ii.

ente, and he onely remayned alpye of all the grane counsayllors, that were lefte vnto Commodus by his father, and vnto hym amonges all the capitaynes his Companions, he had shewed moste honoure and reuerence. Being yet safe, eyther for that Commodus feared hys grauitie, or elles dysymuled because of his povertie. For this also dyd amplyfy hys renowne, that hauynge moste aucthoritie of all men, yet of all men he leamed the pooreste. Vnto this Pertynar therefore wente Letus, and Electus, with a felwe of theyr complices aboute mydnyght, whyles all men slepte. And finding his gates locked thei called by y porter. Who when he opened the gate, and sawe Letus the chyefe Capytayne & the souldyours presente with hym, being sore dismayed wythall, ranne and tolde Pertynar. He furthwyth commaunded them to be lette in, sayenge that anon woulde happen the myschiese he had vnto that daye loked for. He was of so constante a mynde, that he moued not ones from his bedde, nor chaunged hys countenaunce. But wyth a bolde and stoute stomacke nothyng abashed spake vnto Letus and Electus when they were entered (although he beleaued they were sente to slea hym) these wordes. I haue of longe tyme euery nyght loked for this ende of my life, the whyche onely am remaynyng of all hys fathers frendes: Wherefore I meruayled for what purpose Commodus so longe deferred the matter. Why do you therefore thus stape and not execute that ye are commaunded and deliuer me from this dolefull and continual dread. Vnto those wordes answered Letus sayinge. Cease (q he) to talke of thynges vnwoorthy your selfe and your former lyfe, we come not to despyre your death, but the preseruacion of oure selues and all the Romaine Empryre. For the Tyrante is dead, and hath suffred condigne punishmente, receauynge at oure handes those thynges he entended to do vnto vs. And we are comen hither to deliuer the Imperiall power vnto you, whom onely of all the senate for temperaunce of lyfe, aucthoritie, age, and grauitye of maners, we knowe

knowe to be best & entyrelly beloued & reuerenced of the people, Trustynge that we doo, shalbe acceptable vnto the, and profitable to oure selves. Vnto whome Pertynar answered. Leue of (sayd he) thus to scozne and mocke an olde man and so reprove him of timorousnes, entendynge fyrste to deceaue, and after to slea hym. Why q Electus seyng that you do not credyte vs, take this lytle booke (for suerly ye knowe the hande of Commodus) reade it your selfe and ye shall perfectly perceaue what great danger we haue escaped: neyther shal ye fynde in our wordes any temptation, but trusty repute of truethe. The whyche when Pertynar had donne, thynkynge it beste to beleaue them whyche had bene alwayes theretofore hys especiall frendes, and vnderstandynge all the matter, he commytted hym selfe wholy vnto theyr power. It leamed good therefore vnto them to go fyrste vnto the hooft and to assaue the myndes of the souldyours, whome Letus promised easely to wyne vnto his sentence, because he knewe that hys aucthoritie (beyng theyr Capytayne) woulde somewhat preuaile amonges them. Wherefore as many as were presente hastened them vnto the Campe, when muche of the nyght was passed nexte before the fyrste daye of Januarie. They sente besydes trusty messengers to spredde abroad the rumour that Commodus was dead. And that Pertynar (whyche shoulde be Emperour) was nowe goynge towarde the hooft. That bryfte beyng ones blowen, sodenly all the people (as they were madde) ranne throughe the streates. All menne reioysed, and euery manne seuerally wente to tell hys frende, whyche hadde eyther dygnitie or rychesse remaynyng: for vppon them depended the greatest danger, while Commodus lyued. They wente therefore vnto the Temples to render thanckes vnto the G O D D E S, talkynge togyther dyuersely. Some sayde the Tyrante is destroyed: some other the sworde player. Pea manye spake thynges moze detestable.

The Historie of Herodian.

And suche wordes as feare had tyll that daye repressed in silence, the same did thei now (thoughe licentle freely gotten) bluster oute. A great parte also of the people ranne hastily to the campe, fearinge lest the menne of armes wold not willingly accepte Pertinax for Emperour. For thei thought that a moderate Prince was not berpe gratfull vnto the Souldiours, who were accustomed to serue tyranny, and exercise all violence. Therefore they ranne in diuerse plumpes vnto the Campe for to compel them to obedience. And when they were there arrived, Letus, and Electus, wth Pertinax, came thither also. And (the mē of Armes beyng called togithers) Letus said thus vnto them. Commodus your Emperour is deade of an Appoplexie. No other man was the cause of hys death then himselte. For whē we in bayne gaue him good and holome counsel, he orderedinge himselte as you all knowe he accustomed, was sodenlye choked with ouermuche meate and drinke so that he perished by the ende hymselfe sought. For all men dye not by one kynde of death, but vnto many men there are dyuers causes, and yet all tende to one ende. But touching hym, we and the people of Rome haue brought vnto you, a man graue in age, moderate in lyfe, and very experte in warfare, whose valyaunte prowesse, you that are aunciente Souldiours, haue by experience knowen. And the reste haue iudged (beyng so many yeres ruler of the Cyte) not onely worthiest honour, but also admiracion & wonder. Therefore fortune hath not alonely gyue him as a prudent Prince, but also a moste louing father vnto you. Whose souerainitie in the mynne shall not perticularly be mooste pleasaunte vnto you that presently beholde hym, but also vnto them that defende the bankes of Riuers, and the boundes of the Romayne Emperre, as those that retaine in memory the notable actes by him achieved. We shall not at thys presente, wyne the Barbarouse people vnto vs by gyftes, but beyng myndfull of those thynges they suffered whyles thys man was Cayptayne, they wyl be rather subdued wth feare. When Letus hadde spoken these wordes, the people

coude

The seconde booke

Fo. xviii.

could no longer wythholde them selues. But (whyles the menne of armes stode still in theyr dompes) they pronounced Pertynax Emperour, and callinge hym Pertynax their parent, they praysed hym with moost ioyfull acclamacions. The same daye the Souldiours also, although not with like alacritie. But the number of the people myxed amonges them (beyng boyde of armure and celebratyng the feastfull daye) easily compelled the to shoute, and call Pertynax Augustus. Further wth (they being sworne in allegyaunce vnto hym, and the sacrifice ended) all the people and men of armes crowned wth Lawrell, folowed hym. After he was conueyed in the nyghte (as we before sayde) into the Impervall Palayce by the Souldiours and the people, he was troubled wth manye cares. And although he seemed too be of a constante and stoute mynde, yet dyd thynges presente put hym in feare, not very muche so lychted for hys owne life, (for he had at other tymes contempned greater perylls) but throughe the recoyding in hys mynde the sodaine mutacion of tiranny, and ponderynge the nobyltie of manye Senatours, who he thought woulde not permyt after an Emperoure of moost noble byrthe, the mynne to come vnto a man of pryuate and base stocke. For al be it hys temperate and frugall lyfe were well spoken of, and that he had gotten in warrelke affayres great renowne, yet was he of symple lygnage. Therefore after the daye appeared he wente too the Senate house, not sufferynge the fyre or anye other tokens of dygnitye, too be borne before him, vntyll the determination of the Senate were hearde. Whoo as soone as they saw him receiued him al by one accord wth ioyfull welcommynges, saluting him as Augustus and Emperour. But he refusynge the name of Emperoure as a thyng odious, excused his age and desyred pardon, saying there were many of the Senatours more worthy the mynne then he. And wth that worde he tooke Glabrio by the hande, commaundyng hym to syt in the Impervall Throne. For this Glabrio was the noblest of the Senatours, accomptyng the lyne of hys bilitie of

F. iiii.

genealogie Glabrio,

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me of armes, that thei shold hurte or oppresse none of the people, neyther do iniury to any wawe faring mā, & finally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauiour and modestie. When he entered or late in iudgement, he shewed a curteyle countenance, and for that he chiefly represented Marcus, he gaue a greates delectacion vnto the Elders, and the resydue of the people, he easely drew to loue hym, beyng deliuered from cruell tyrannye, and brought into a quiet lyfe. The report hereof beyng once farre of diuulged, prouoked all nacions and armies, either subiecte or confederate to the Romaine people, to geue deuynne honors vnto hym. Many of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romaine subiection, or stirred any sedicion (throughe feare of his prowesse, whiche they did remember he shewed in the former warres, and throughe confidence of his iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offended no man, but gaue prayses vnto euery man worthye hymmerites, and that he was voyde of vyolence and crueltye) of theyr free willes they yealded them selues vnto hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassadors, to gratifye the people of Rome, that they were gouerned by the auctorite of Pertynar. But the thing that was most acceptable vnto the greatest part of all men, bothe openly and priuately was that it happened vnto the Romaines people to haue a more gentle and gentle Emperour. Whereat the men of armes in the Cytie appoynted vnto the Emperours Guards, greatly grudged. For being reduced from extorcions, vnto a modest behauiour of lyfe, and rekenyng for theyr olone shame, that make and rule gouernailce, as by the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lyfence to be taken away, they determined no leger to sustayne suche a gouernour. Wherefore in the begynnyng they bare themselves more stubborne and lesse obedyent to his commaundement. Finally when he had reigned scarcely two full monethes, (hauing then shewed perfecte proufe of his goodnes) and all men beyng erected into a singuler hope (sodaynly a pernicious happenyng

openge it, utterly destroyed all thinges. So that his notable begynnynges and enterpryses (whiche were lyke greatly to profite all men) perished in the myshes of their course. For spyke of all he aduoged all lande that was vntolled and vnoccupied, eyther in Italye or any other place, and what soeuer was vacant in the tyme of Kinges, vnto the tyllers and laborers therof, vnto whome also he gaue tenne yerres freedom from Tares, and perpetuall libertie. Neyther would he suffer his owne name, to be writte in Tempours possessiones, sayenge they were not Tempours, but common vnto the Romaines. He remytted also all tributes, the whiche Tyrantes had inuented to get money in the Rynges of Kynges, in the haues of Cities, and by comyn wayes and by pathes, and restored them to their aunciente liberties. It seemed also that he would do many other lyke thynges. For he had dyuen oute of the Cytie all false accusers, & commaunded them to be punished wheresoeuer they were founde, forseyng that no mā shold be troubled throughe wronge accusation. And therfore the senate and all other trusted to lyue in greates tranquillitie and blessed estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe so equall vnto euery man, that he neuer brought his Sonne beyng a stripling in yerres, into the Emperours palayce, but kept him in a priuate house. So that he went to schole after his accustomed vylage, nothinge only the priuate children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shew forth any tyrannouse or Imperuall pompe, duringe the tyme that Pertynar lyued. At this modestie of maners and lyfe onely the Pretoriane Soldyours repyned, & chynso, grudginge at the presente condicion of thinges affected their olde sensualitye and lyfence, to behaue them the men selues violently and to ryste all thynges. And amonge at armes their belly bauctes, they consulted to destroye Pertynar as one combersome vnto them, and to sette in his Emper place to rule the Romaine affayres, some other that were wylde and wantone, and would geue them libertye moche libertie.

genealogie vnto Aeneas the sonne of Venus and Anchises, and now the second time Cōsull. Who answered Pertynar thus. Cruely I, to whome of all me your selfe iudge moste worthy, do giue you place in the myre, and with me at the Senate committeth vnto you thole soueraigne aucthoritie. Than Pertynar beyng almoste constrained by the earnestte prayer of euerye Senatour, and halfe as yet in doubt, ascended the imperiall seate, and spake vnto them as foloweth.

The oration of Pertynar.

This your consente and benygne accorde of bestowinge vpon me suche ample benefites, amanges so greate a company of noble men, seing it is boide from all suspicion of flatterye, and sheweth manifest argumente of beneuolence and truthe, woulde encourage some manne to take vpon him the thinges proffered. Trusting that he should with ease gouerne, whyle he mighte perceyue suche gentlenes in you. But in contrarie wise, these weightye charges, as they amase me with perception of this honour, euen so doo they trouble me with great thought and care. For firste of all in receyving of great benefites, it is harde to render the lyke. For in the mutual doing of good turnes, if he that oweth lytle, restore verye muche, the facility of recompensyng is not so much regarded, as the apperaunce of a gratfull minde is in hi cōmended. But whan any man dothe first bestowe some greate gyfte vpon an other, if he then litle deserue it, he seemeth not so muche to wante wherewith he should make recompence, as him selfe to be boyde of wytt and moste vngatefull. I perceyue therfore in my mynde howe vncasye thys prooffe is vnto me, least that by chaunce, I shewe my selfe vnworthy the honour I haue receiued of you. For the type of dignitie conspyeth not in the veryall seate: but in workes which should not abase y same. And euen as muche as we hate thynges passed, so muche do we hope well of thinges that are to come. And as the memorie of iniuries is fyred in mynde, (for that whyche hurterh is neuer forgotten) so do benefytes flyde away throughe the abusyng of them. For truly lybertye delecteth not a man so muche as bondage

page offendeth. Neyther dothe any mā suppose that he ought to render thanks for vsyng his proper substaunce after his owne mynde: (for of ryghte he cha- lengith that permyssion vnto hym selfe) but he that is dyspoyled of his goodes, wyll neuer forget the iniurie done vnto him. No man reckeneth that to be his owne lucre which he getteth to the commune profytte. For those thynges that be in commune are lytle regarded of euery manne particularly. But yf that whyche is proper vnto a priuate manne, do chaunce wols then he loketh for, then thynketh he hymselfe not to bee well dealte wythall. Besydes this, they whyche haue accustomed the enormities and vnmensurable prodigalitye of Tyrantes, (yf a manne entende for wante of money to lyue thyrselfe, and in mensurable meane) doo not so soone attribute it vnto a moderate dyspence, as thei do reprove him furthwith of spylthye couetyse. Neyther do they esteeme any man able to gyue large gyftes, that dothe abstayne from dyspence and extorcion. But he which dyspended his substaunce well, and accordyng to his degree, dothe not onely not take away from any man, but also teacheth others to be frugall, and spare that them selues gette. Therfore (ryght honorable fathers) pondering these thynges in your mindes) endeuoꝝ your selves together with me, and accompte the administracion of this Emptre to be commune vnto vs. For, seying you shall liue in a weale publicke of good men, and not vnder Tyranny, your selues ought to conceaue good hope of thynges, and to promise the same vnto others. When Pertynar had spoken thiese thynges (hauyng addes vnto the Senate a good courage) he was receaued wyth ioyfull shoutes and verye honorably entertayned. And hauyng vsyted the Temples of Iupiter and the other Goddes, when the sacrifice (accordyng to the aunciente vsage) was ended, he retorned into the imperiall Palayce. After it was spredd abroad what he had eyther in the Senate house spoken, or vnto the people wyrtten, all men reioysed: trustinge that they shoulde haue him a gentle and graciouslye Ruler, rather a fa-
C. i. ther

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me of armes, that thei shold hurte or oppresse none of the people, neyther do iniury to any wawe faring mā, & finally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauiour and modestie. When he entered or sate in iudgement, he the ners and behauior represented Marcus, he gaue a greate delectacion vnto the Elders, and the resydue of the people, he easelye drew to loue hym, beyng deliuered from cruell tyranye, and brought into a quiet lyfe. The report hereof beyng once farre of diuulged, prouoked all naciōs and armies, either subiecte or confederate to the Romayne people, to geue deuyne honors vnto hym. Pea yf anye of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romayne subiection, or stirred any sedicion (throughe feare of his prowelle, whyche they did remember he shewed in the former warres, and throughe confidence of his iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offended no man, but gaue prayses vnto euery man worthy his merites, and that he was voyde of vyolence and crueltye) of they free willes they yealded them selues vnto hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassadors, to gratyspe the people of Rome, that they were gouerned by the auctorite of Vertynar. But the thing that was most acceptable vnto the greatest part of all men, bothe openly and priuately was that it happened vnto the Romaynes people to haue a mercifull and gentle Emperour. Whereat the men of armes in the Cyte appoynted vnto the Emperours Cardes, greatly grudged. For being reduced from excozions, vnto a modest behauior of lyfe, and rekenyng for theyr olone shame, that meke and ryple gouernaunce, as by the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lycence to be taken away, they determynd no lēger to sustayne suche a gouernor. Wherefore in the begynnyng they bare themselves more stubburne and lesse obedyent to his commaundement. Finally when he had reigned scarcely two full monethes, (hauing then shewed perfecte pofe of his goodnes) and all men beyng erected into a singuler hope) sodenly a pernicious happe enuenge

auenge it, utterly destroyed all thinges. So that by notable begynnynges and enterpryses (whiche were lyke greatly to pofyte all men) perished in the myddes of their course. For by the of all he aduindged all lande that was vntolled and vnooccupied, eyther in Italye or any other place, and what soeuer was vacant in the tyme of Kinges, vnto the tyllers and labozers therof, vnto whome also he gaue tenne peres freedom from Tares, and perpetuall libertye. Neyther would he suffre his owne name, to be writte in Tempours possessions, sayenge they were not Tempours, but common vnto the Romaynes. He remytted also all tributes, the whiche Tyrantes had inuented to get money in the Ryuages of Ryuers, in the hauens of Cities, and by comen wayes and by pathes, and restored them to their aunciente liberties. It seemed also that he would do many other lyke thynges. For he had dyuen oute of the Cyte all falsse accusers, & commaunded them to be punished wheresoeuer they were founde, forseyng that no mā shold be troubled throughe wronge accusation. And therfore the senate and all other trusted to lyue in greate tranquillitie and blessed estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe so equal vnto euery man, that he neuer brought his sonne beyng a stripling in peres, into the Emperours palayce, but kept him in a priuate house. So that he went to schole after his accustomed blage, nothinge vnyke pryuate children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shewe forth any tyrannouse or Imperuall pompe, durynge the tyme that Vertynar lyued. At this modestie of maners and lyfe onely the Pretoriane Solodors repnyed, & chafed, grudginge at the presente condicion of thinges affected their olde sensualite and lycence, to behaue themselves violently and to ryle all thinges. And amonge their belly bāctres, they consulted to destroye Vertynar as one combourne vnto them, and to sette in his place to rule the Romayne affayres, some other that were wyld and wantone, and woulde geue them libertye moche libertye.

Wherfore sodaynlie (whiles every man was in quiet) they being made ran in great companies with much haste at noonetide vnto the Emperours Palayce, wryth theyr speares extended and theyr swordes naked. And at their thither comming, the Chamberers of the Palayce (being affonied with this sodayne matter vnlooked for, and being fewe against manye, and naked against harnessed men) were not able to resist them. And therfore every man lefte hys station, and ranne dyuerselye hyther and thither. Yet a fewe of the Emperours chiefe friends, (hauinge shewed vnto Pertynar the flocking together of the Souldiours) perswaded him to make shyfte for him selfe by fleinge, and to call vpon the people for ayde. But he (although he they counselled him profitably) at that presente, thinkynge it a shamefull thyng, vntwoy the Emperiall Palace, and hys forme lyfe, to committe his safetie vnto flighte and corners, determined to pꝛeuent the peryll and go furthe amonges them, trustyng that he should perswade them what he woulde, and mitigate theyr furpous harnes. He wente out of his chamber & meetinge the raging Souldiours, enquired what was the cause of this sodayne sturre, willynge them to cease from so filthy a tumult. And being not ones abashed wryth the peryll, but retaining a graue countenance conuenient to the Emperiall Maiesty, nor shewing any thyng appertaining vnto a suppliaunt, he spake these wordes vnto them. Truely if ye sea me (O Souldiours) neyther do ye atcheue any notable enterpryse, nor do me any grieve at all, being of this age & renown. For certainly there is some necessarye ende of mans lyfe. But you that are appointed to the charge & custodie of youre Prynce, and to remoue perylls from his person, to begin murder your selues, and to defile your handes with bloude, not onely Cypre, but also of your Emperoure, take hede, I saye, leaſt it be presentlye abhominable, and in time to come dangerous vnto your selues. For I haue committed no iniury or offence agaynst you. If you be sorowfull for the death of Commodus, truly it was not strauinge for him to dye

The wordes of Pertynar vnto the Souldiours.

die, being borne a manne. But if you thinke he was slaine by treason, verely it was not my default, being one (as your selues knowe) voyde from all suspition. For the thinges that were then committed, your selues knewe fyrst, so that if any suspition rose, it happened in others. As for the reste, although he be dead, yet wyl I not suffre you to want any thyng that you wil modestly, and mete for your estate wrythoute violence and extorcion desyre. By these his wordes some of them were euen then pacified and began to depart, reuerencyng the holynes and age of the prynce: but he was of the other wryth an assaulie slayne. Who (after they had committed this wycked dede) knowyng that the people woulde be dolefull for it, wente streygth vnto the Campe, and kept them selues within the fortresse, hauing appointed men of armes in y Colours to kepe the people from the walles. This end had Pertynar, that was for his lyfe and maners (as we haue before sayde) worthy eternall prayse. When the rumour of this murdre was spred amonges the people, all places were fylled wryth tumultes and lamentacions. The people wandered hither and thither lyke madde men vncertayne what they shoulde doo. They soughte for the Authours of the myschiese, whome they could neither fynd, nor be auenged on. But especiallye the Senate were meruaylouse dolefull, repuniting their own calamitye for y they wated so good a father, and soo meeke a Prynce, and fearyd alloo tyranny, whych they knewe to be agreable vnto the menne of armes. But when a daye or twoo were passed, all the commonaltye throughe euery mans persiculver feare remayned in rest. Those that bare anye aucthoritye, departed vnto suche Banours as they possessed furthest from the Cypre, leaſt that in chosynge a newe Gouernoure some greuous offence shoulde be layd to their charge. And y souldiours (knowyng the people to be in quyet, and no manne remaynyng that woulde reuenge the Prynces death) kepte them selues wrythin theyr fortresse. And haupyng set vpon the wall one wryth a verye loude voyce

G.iii. they

they proclaymed the Emppye to be solde, sayinge they woulde deliuer it vnto hym that woulde gyue mooste money for it, and woulde bynge hym safelye into the Empervall Palayce. That Proclamacion hearde, neuer moued any man of the Senate that was grane or in auctoritey neyther anye manne of the noblytye, or synallye of those that were ryche, beyng sewe in number, throughe the tyrannye of Commodus. Neyther durste anye of them approche vnto the wall to purchase w money so detestable a domynyon. But it was declared vnto one Iulianus (who had bene Consull, and was supposed also to haue great aboundance of daunce of money) at nyghte whan he sat at Supper banquetynge (for he was reckened a man of euill conuersacion. Whereupon his wyfe, his daughter, and a companye of Paralytes, perswaded him that leauing his table he shoulde make hast and knowe what were done. And after in his goynge they exhorted hym to occupie the voide Emppye, assymynge that he might conuynce all others by gyftes, he was perdye so palsyng ryche. Wherefore when he approached nyghte the walles, he cried with a lowde voyce that he would giue them what they demaunded, saying he had great abundaunce of ryches and Chestes full of goulde and siluer. And at the same time one Sulpicianus who hadde also bene Consull, and gouernoure of the Cytye, and was father in lawe to Pertynar, cheapened the Emppye: but the menne of armes suspected in hym his assympte wyth Pertynar, thynkyng some deceyte to be in it, that he myght therebye auenge the death of Pertynar. Wherefore, hauynge lette downe ladders, they toke Iulianus vp vnto the walles, not beyng so bolde as to open the gates vntyll they were accorded of paymente of the money. And he beyng entered the Fortresse, fyrste of all promysed that he woulde restore the honoures and Images of Commodus whych the Senate hadde taken downe, and that he woulde graunte vnto theym the same lycence they hadde vnder Commodus, and further that he woulde gyue vnto euerye Souldyore more money, then

The am-
bicyon of
Iulya-
nus.

Sulpit-
anus.

then they eyther durste desyre or hoped to receyue, neyther shoulde there be anye delaye in the payment: For (as he) it is safely kepte in my house. With which promys the menne of armes beyng entyled, and trayned wyth great hope, pronounced Iulianus theyr Prynce, and gaue hym the surname of Commodus. Then dysplayinge theyr baners (vpon the which they had painted the pcyctures of Iulianus) they concluded to bynge hym furthe. Wherefore when Sacrysye (after the vsage) was ended, he wente furthe entyred wyth a greater Garde then other Emperours were accustomed: For hauynge boughte themppye by violence agaynst the peoples wyll, and by fylthy shame, w good cause, he feared thinsurrectyon of the Commynalte. But the Souldyours beyng armed and compassed on euerye syde like a cyrcle, that if nede requyred they myghte syghte, take into the myddes of theym theyr Emperoure, and lyftynge theyr shildes and Targettes ouer theyr heades to be therebye the more safer yf any stones were thowen from the houses, they broughte hi into theperours Palayce. None of the people durste resyste them, neyther dyd they folowe the Emperoure as they accustomed with ioyful shoutes, but euerye manne cursed hym bytterlye, reprouyng hym for that he hadde purchased themppye wyth money. Then fyrst of all were the dysposicions of the Souldyours corrupted, then increased the fylthy and insacpable couetyse of money, with contempt of thempervall Maiestye. For when there was no mā remaynyng that woulde reuenge the cruell deathe of the late Prynce, neyther anye that woulde wythstande that fylthy acte of sale and vnboneste marchandyse, the same gaue occasion vnto the menne of armes to ware thereafter more vnreuerente and rebellyng, in so muche that auarice and contempte of the Prynce daylye encreased euen vnto deathe. For Iulianus hauynge obtayned themppye, gaue hym selfe to ryotte, neglectynge the weake publyke, and leadyng a naughtye voluptuose lyfe. yea he de- ceuyed the truste of the Souldyours beyng vnable to

Iulya-
nus ma-
de Empe-
rour by
Pretoria
Souldy-
ours.

Pyger
called to
the pīre.

Syria.
Pheni-
ces.
Euphra-
tes.

performe hys promyses vnto them. For he had nat so greate substaunce as he bragged of, and the common treasure was exhausted by the immoderate dispēces of Commodus. For these causes the men of armes on the one part detested him. On the other side the people not ignorant thereof despyed hym. Wherefore they pursued him as he passed by with reproche, vpbraiding hym for hys fylthye and vnstable pleasures, so that openly in the very Theater (vnto the which a great multitude of men resorted) they wold rebuke Iulianus, and call Pyger & Protector of the Romayne Empire and Presidēt of the Soueraine principality, prayeng hym that he woulde wyth all speade come vnto the and deliuer them from those manyfolde iniuries. The same Pyger had bene Cōsull, and then was gouernor of all Siria, the whiche was the chiefeste dignitie at that tyme. For all Phenyces and all the Regyons vnto the ryuer of Euphrates were vnder hys dominion. He was then somwhatte stryken in age, and hauynge bene occupied in many weyghty affayres, had obtained the renowne of modestye and ryghteousnesse, so that he seemed to folowe the lyfe of Vertue. By the whiche he chiefly wanne the fauor of the people. For which respecte, they with often clamours called vpon hym, taunting wyth reproches Iulianus beynge present, and extolling wyth prayes and ioyfull shoutes Pyger that was absente. Whereof when Pyger once heard, (trusting that all thinges wold prosper accordyng to hys desyre (seynge that Iulianus was of the men of Armes neglected, as one that had violated hys truthe and promyse, and of the people contempned as a man not worthy, for that he had purchased hys principalitye) he beganne to hope for the obtayning of the Emppre. And fyrste he dysmyssed home (some on time some an other) diuerse of the Capytaynes, Tribunes, and other mē of Armes, who likewise had knowledge of all newes that were brought vnto him from Rome. This dyd he to the intent the rumors mighte be spreade verie broade in the Caste. For so he supposed to ioyne manye vnto him, yf he seemed nat to enterpryse the occuppence

cuppeng of the Emppre by disceite, but to succor them that desyred ayde. Wherefore all the people there aboutes came incontinentlye towardes hym euerye man by hym selfe, besechynge hym to take the charge of the common wealthe furthwyth vpon hym. For the nature of Siria is naturally vnstable and prone vnto chaunge of thinges: And they loued Pyger exceedingly, for that he behaued hymselfe verie gently amonges them, delityng them wyth pleasant playes and ioyteoule solempnities. The Sirians are also of their owne nature very desyrouse of such thewes. Amonges whome the Antiochians (enhabyting a great and famous Cytie) do throughtoute the hole pere eyther in the Citie selfe or elles in the Suburbes, celebrate feastes and playes. Wherefore in lettynge furthe thewes and solempnytes vnto them, he so wanne their hartes that they feruently loued hym. The whiche when Pyger perfectly perceaued, hauing a certayne daye commaunded the men of armes to be presente, and all the people comynge togethers, in a hygge place for that purpose erected, he said vnto them as ensueth.

Peraduenture your selues know howe gentle my dysposiciō hath bene, & howe longe I haue consulted or I haue aboute any weyghtye matter, neyther woulde I haue come furthe to speake vnto you at this tyme yf I hadde bene ledde eyther by myne owne pryuate counsell or by assured hope, or elles with affection surmountinge truste. But the Romaynes call me and with intercessions weary me to stretch my helppynge hāde vnto the, and that I should not permit so excellent and glorious an Emppre lest by our elders to be nowe shamefully destroyed. And as it is a presumptuous and rash thinge to medell in so weightie affayres without occasion, so yf a mā deny succour vnto the that wante and desyre it, then is he then in the laste of Cowardyse, and Treason. Wherefore for this purpose am I come furthe vnto you that I myghte knowe youre aduys what ye iudge beste to be done, and that I myghte vse you as Counsellers in all this busynesse. If it do prosperouslye comynge to passe, the commoditie thereof

The or-
dination
of
Pyger.

thereof shall be comune vnto you and mee. It is no smal riches that sollicit vs, but it is the very Romain people, vnto whom the Goddes haue giuen the domynion of al thinges, and the Romaine Emperre selfe, as yet wauering, and to no man certainly establisshed. The counsaile whych we enter is assured, yf we consider the mindes of the suters, no manie being able to respyte vs. For they that come from thence, repozte that the men of armes the selues of whome he bought the empire, are not very faithfull vnto him, for y he hath not perfourmed his promyse. Let me heare now your opinions herein. Whiles he spakethese wordes, furth with thole armpe and all the common people saluted him as Emperour and Augustus. And when he was clothed wpyth Purple and adozned wpyth Impervall besture, beyng there sodaynlye as of purpose sounde, wpyth the syre borne besore hym, they conuayed hym syrre vnto the Temples of Antyoche, and then to hys owne house. The whych, as it were not nowe priuate, they decked wpyth Impervall signes and ornaments. With those thinges Pyger beyng ioyfull and perceyuing the mynde of the Romaines, and beneuolence of al other me towardes him, thought now al his purpose to be in perfecte plyght. When y bzuite of this was blowen abroad, incontynently al nacyns that inhabited ouer against Europe, hasted euery ma for him selfe, to proffer him theyr assistance. And Ambassadors also from al partes came to Antioche vnto hym, as vnto their lawfull pryncce. The kinges also and the rulers dwelling beyond Euphrates & Tygris, sente to gratifye hym, promysynge theyr ayde in al hys enterpryses. The whych Ambassadors rewarded wpyth grete gyftes and thankes he dysmyssed, sayng vnto them, he neded not as at that present anye ayde. For his Emperre was wel strengthened, he whiche he wolde wout bloodshed wel gouerne. His mynd being thus exalted w great hope, he began to be moze negligent in executing y he shoulde, deliting him selfe and the people of Antioche w pleasures & setting furth of lawes and playes, neither thought he once of going vnto

Pyger saluted Emperour.

Europe.

Euphrates & Tygris.

to Rome, y whiche shoulde first haue bene done, neither certified he the Illyrian armies (whiche shoulde chiefly haue bene won vnto h) of these affaires: for he trusted that when they once knew the matter, they woulde together with the Romaines and nacions of the Orient condescende vnto him. Whiles he thus litle regarded his affaires, the same thereof was syred amonges the Pannoniens, the Illyziens, & al the other armies abiding on the coastes of Danuby & Rheyne, for the defence of the Romaine Emperre againste the Barbariens. Then was gouernour of y Pannoniens (for they were al ruled by one mans authoritie) one named Seuerus, of the nacion of Affricque, a man belement & diligente in furthering his affaires, accustomed to leade a hard & sharpe life prompt in y inuentio, and speedy in the execution of thinges. The whiche seing y Romaine Emperre to hang vnstedfast, & as it were opened to pillage, despised the one Emperour as a sluggish coward, & the other as of no accompt. Certaine dreames & Oracles besides augmented his hope, & other diuinations of thinges to come, the whiche whiche they came to effect obtained report of veritie: of y whiche him selfe wrote most part in booke of his own life, & published theym openlye painted in Tables. But it behooueth me not to ouerpasse wout wryting his last dreame, whiche being of greatest weight, brought most hope vnto him. For whiche it was first told him y Pertinax was made Emperour, Seuerus hauinge ended sacrifice, and beyng sworne in obedience to the Prince, allone as he came home was take with a dead slepe: In y whiche he dreamed that he saue a great and gorgyouse boole decked wpyth the Emperours sabell, carpyng Pertinax hym selfe throughe the Citie, by the strete called Sacra via. But when he came vnto the entree of the market place (vnto the whiche the people whyles they were in libertie accustomed to resort in grete assemblies) he lemed vnto him that y the boole quertlye Pertinax vnto y ground, & offering his backe vnto Seuerus standing nygh, caried him throughe the myddes of the market place, where he was reuerenced of all the people.

Danuby and the Rheyne. Pannoniens. Seuerus

The dreame of Seuerus.

There remaineth in the same place vnto thys day the Image of the same dreame beyng verye greate & made of brasse. After thys sorte Seuerus beyng extolled in mynde, and thynkyng him selfe to be sollicitied vnto the mynde by diuine prouydence, determined to assay the myndes of the Souldiours. Wherefore, adioyning Tribun. fyrste vnto him the Capptaynes, Tribunes, and the chiefest of the menne at armes, in talke with them of the Romayne empyre, sayde it was nygh destroyed, no man remainyng by whome it mighte be valpauitly and prudently gouerned. Inueighyng also agaynst the Pretorian Cohortes, who had defiled their orche of allegyaunce wyth their Emperours bloude, he sayde the deathe of Pertynar oughte to be reuenged, beyng notwytstandyng ignoraunte that the memozye of Pertynar was tyred yet in the myndes of the Illyryan armies. For they had by hys guidinge vnder the Emperoure Marcus obtayned many victories agaynst the Germanaynes. And beyng lieutenaut of Illiria he shewed many exampls of vertue and prowesse in warre, and exhibited to hys companions muche beneuolence and modestie with a meeke and moderate gouernaunce. Wherefore (worshipping the memozye of y^e prince) they greuously grudged that so greate crueltye shoulde be done vnto him. Seuerus therfore takyng vnto hi this occasion, led them easely whither he wolde, faining y^e he affected not the mynde, but soughte to reuenge the bloud of Pertynar. And as the me of y^e Regyon are of great and tall bodies prompte and redy to warre and murder, so are they of dul and grosse capacite: where by they do not easely perceyue what a man craftely spekethe or worketh. Therfore whē Seuerus had faith fully promysed them to persecute the murdre of Pertynar, he so wan al theyr fauours, that he was named Emperour, and receiued the whole aucthority of the. And after he vnderstode the mindes of the Pannoniens, immediately he allured vnto him wth giftes the rulers of all the nighb^e nations y^e were subiecte vnto the Romayne Empyre. For Seuerus was y^e rediest of all men to faine frendshyppe, to that he passed not to be

peritured yf heade requyzed, alwayes haupyng one thynge in his mouth, and an other in hys stomacke. Therfore after he had gotten credite and fauoure by letters with all the Illyrians and Rulers of the Prouinces, haupyng gathered togyther Souldiours from euery parte, and taken vpon him the surname of Pertynar, the whiche he supposed woulde be most acceptable, not onely vnto the Illyrians, but also vnto all the Romayne people, and haupyng called them all together into the fildes, he spake vnto theym as ensueth. You do euidently shew (O souldiours) of what loyalty & Religion you are towarbes the Goddes bi whom ye are sworne and what reuerence ye bere vnto your Emperour, whē you do so muche detest the men of armes of y^e Citie (being ministers rather of pompe and supersticie, then of vertue & prowesse) for that they haue committed so horrible an offence. And certainly I that am now entring into so great hope (your selues pardie al know how obedient I haue bene vnto Princes) desire to atcheue and bring to effect y^e shalbe acceptable vnto you: neither to suffre the Romayne Empire to runne into ruyne, the whiche being gouerned by our elders wth great aucthoritie, was reuerenced of all men. And after it fel vnto Commodus, althoughe throughe his youth it began manye times to decaye, yet was al the fault therof shadowed, partly wth the princes nobilitie & partly wth the memozye of his good father. Neither did his vices deserue rather hate then cōpassiō, for we imputed not y^e thinges y^e were done, so muche vnto hi, as vnto y^e flattering Parasites & other Counsellors & ministers of vile voluptuousenes, untill the yre came vnto y^e godly olde man, the memozye of whose vertue & goodnes resteth yet in your myndes, whō notwithstandinge it was so farre from their entent to sustaine, y^e wth abhominable murder they destroyed him. After hi hath a man (whom I know not) purchased the dominion of Sea and lande. And for that acte is hated of the people. Neyther are the men of armes true vnto hym, because he hath deceyued them. And yf they woulde defende hym, yet are they not in number o^z

balpaunte proweſſe to be compared vnto you. Beſp-
des that you haue bene exerciſed in warlike affayres.
For you are accuſtomed to fight with the barbarouſe
nations, to ſuffer al labour, to deſpyſe heate and colde,
to paſſe ryuerſe frozen ouer with iſe, to drynke water
dygged and not ſpringinge oute of the ycarthe, and to
watche in hunting of wyld beaſtes: ſynallye you are
furnyſhed with all prouiſions appertayninge vnto
balaunties, ſo that it is eaſe for no man to withſtāde
your ſtrength. For the man of armes is approued by
labour, and not by banqueting and ryotter: with y whi-
che thei are ſo traded, that thei can not ſuſteyne your
hopce, muche leſſe your ſyghte. But yf the affayres of
ſiria ſeeme terryble vnto any man, let the ſame por-
der howe weake they are and wyth howe ſymple hope
thei be ruled, that they dare not once come furth or cō-
ſulte of goynge vnto the Cyte, but taking thoſe habi-
tacions in good woꝛthe, accompte the pleaſures eueri
daye gotten to be the lucre of that vncōſtant auctho-
ritie. As for the nacion of ſirians is chiefly addicted
vnto iellies and playes. And thei which enhabite Anti-
sche are thoughte principallye to ſauour ſiger. For
the other nacions and Cytes ſeynge no man woꝛthye
the Emperre, or that ſhould modeſtly and balpauitey
gouerne the cōmon wealthe, at the laſte ſaigned them
ſelues to obey hym. But yf they ones knewe that an
Emperour were created by the Illyrian armie, and
hearde therewithall oure name, the whyche is not vñ-
know vnto them (for my ſelfe haue heretofore had do-
minion ouer them) they wyl not alledge cowardice or
flouthe vnto vs. Neyther will they abide your inuali-
ons or proue your balaunte proweſſe eſpecially, ſeyng
they are not comparable vnto you, eyther in talnes of
perſon, warlyche exerciſes, or fygthing hāde to hāde.
Wherfore lette vs with all ſpeade poſſeſſe the Cyte of
Rome, the verpe ſeate of the emperre, and then ſhall we
ſafely byyng to paſſe the reſidewe, affyeng our ſelues
in the oracles of the Goddes, & in the ſtrength of your
weapons & bodies. When Seuerus had ſpoke theſe
wordes vnto them they receaued hym wyth ioyfull
ſhoutes

ſhoutes and callinge hym Auguſtus and Pertinax Seuerus
prompyſed hym their beneuolente hartes and myndes. is named
And he thinking it not good to prolonge the time, cō- Auguſt.
maunded them with all celeritee to be armed, proclai- and Per-
med his voyage towarde the Cite, gaue vnto euerie tinax.
manne bytaylor, and other ſufficiente neceſſaries for
their iorney, and remoued with all ſpeade, reſſinge in
no place, nor ones ſuffring the ſouldiours to ſtaye, by-
ryll throughe they greate labour they coulde ſcarſely
ſetche breathe. And hym ſelfe trauaylinge wyth the
ſormeſſe of them, and lodgyng in a ſimple tente, dyd
eate and dryncke of the ſame the ſouldiours dyd, ne-
uer ſhewinge any pompe, or imperyll wantonneſſe
whereby euerie daye he wared moze acceptable then
other. For ſeynge he was not onely partaker, but
also authoure and heade of all they trauayle he be-
came ſo honourable vnto them all, that they ſeamed
moor gladd to do anye thyng he woulde com-
maunde. After he hadde paſſed Pannonye, and
was come vnto the mountaines of Italy, preuenting
ſo the ſame of his approche that he was in open ſight,
before hys commynge was harde of, a meruaylouſe
dreade inuaded the Italyen Cityes, when they ſawe
ſoo greate an armie. For the inhabitauntes of Italye
bryng of a longe ſpace boyde from warre, dyd nowe
wyl they lande and lyued in peace. For as longe as
the Cyte was free, and that the Capitaynes for the
warres were elected by the Senate, the Italyen naci-
ons were euer in harnelle. And hanyng ſubdued
the Grecians and Barbaryens, gate vnto thei ſel-
ues the dominion of Lande and Sea. Neyther was
there anye clymate, or parte of the woꝛlde vnto the
whyche the Romaynes ſtretched not they force.
But after that Auguſtus hadde obtayned the Em-
perre, he releaſed the Italyans from labour, and toke
from them they weapons, and reſeined wyth hym
for appoynted wages onely certayne mercenarye
ſouldiours to defende the Romayne Emperre.
Then compaſſed he the boundes of hys Emperre
wyth the greatneſſe of ryuerſe and dyches, wyth
H. liij. byggs

hyghe and sharpe hylles, and wyth deserte places. Therefore when they harde that Seuerus was nyghe with so greate an armye, beyng (not withoute cause) with that vnaccustomed thyng affonped, when they durste neyther resyste him, oz forbyd hym passage, thei mette hym crowned wyth lawrell, and receaued hym into theyr Cyties, the gates beyng opened. And he abydyng no longer in anye place then sufficed to do sacryfice and speake vnto the people, kepte on his iorney towardes Rome. When this was declared vnto Iulianus, he thought hymselfe bitterly vnbonne, he hadde so ostentymes harde of the power and multitude of the Allypian armye. For he mystrusted the people of whom he knewe hymselfe hated, neyther had he great affiaunce in his garde, because he had deceaued the. Therefore hauinge gathered togither a greate some of money partely of his owne, and partely of his frendes, and what so euer he soude eyther in the temples, oz anye other places, he distributed it amonges the Souldiours, that thereby he myghte reconceyle theyr fauour. But they (althoughe they hadde receaued many ample gostes) rendred no thankses, in respect of their dutie to be nowe payde, and not one benefite bestowed on them. Furthermore, althoughe the frendes of Iulianus perswaded hym to leade furthe an armie, and kepe the straites of the Alpes, (for this Alpes are mooste hyghe hylles, wherof the lyke are not in this Regyon, stretched furthe in the maner of a wall, and compassing all Italy, as though nature for the more felicitie of the countrey hadde added this on heape, that it myght haue a munycion vnpzeignable, stretching from the Northerne vnto the Southerne sea, yet durste he not ones go furthe of the Cyte. But sente vnto the Souldiours desiring them to armie and exercise them selues, and to caste a trenched before the Cyte. Hym selfe prepared all apparayle for the warre within the Cyte selfe, especially he endeuynted to breake the Elephantes (whome he had before ordeined for Pompe and triumph) to suffre littars one the other, thinking that the Allyrian Souldiours and the

The
Alpes.

ses should be put in feare with the sighte and greatnes of those bestes, whose like thei had neuer before seene. And all the Cyte was busied with forging of armure, and makynge of warlycke instrumentes. But whyles the Souldiours of Iulianus delayed the tyme in apparelling them selues to battayle, newes wer brought that Seuerus was arriued euen at hande. He had sente many of his Souldiours priuely at sundrye tymes to Rome, the whiche in the nyght entered the Citty by diuers wayes, hauyng couered theyr harnesse wyth the habite of Pagans. And now was the aduersarie with in the Cite, whyles Iulianus dreamed in a mannering vncertayne what to doo. The whiche when the people perceaued, eueri man being stricken with feare, & doubtinge the power of Seuerus they seyned them selues to take his parte, despyllenge Iulianus for that he was a coward and fygger for that he was southe- full: yet dyd they greatlye wonder that Seuerus was then so nyghe at hande. Howe Iulianus flaggeringe and voyde of Counsell, hauinge fyrste called the Senate togithers, sente letters vnto Seuerus to conclude a peace betwene them taking hym as felowe in to the Emppye wyth him. But althoughe the Senate had ordeyned all chiese thynges, yet perceauing hym to tremble throughe despayre of his safegarde, thei tour ned wholly vnto Seuerus. And two oz thre dayes after, when they harde that Seuerus was euen at hande contemnyng Iulianus, they assembled in the Senate house by the commaundement of the Consulles: for thei haue the charge of the Romayne affayres when there is any doute of the Emppye. And when thei had there manye tymes mette togithers, consulted what was nedefull to be done, whyles Iulianus yet remained in the Pallayce lamentyng his fortune, and humbly despying them, that he myght grue ouer the Emppye, and religne all his authoritie vnto Seuerus. But when the Senate perceaued Iulianus so fearful, his Garde affonped, and hym selfe forsaken of all men, they concluded his death, and pronounced Seuerus Emperour. Then they sente Ambassadors

3.1. vnto

A Tribu
ne newe
Julian^o.

unto hym, to hereof some were Magistrates, and some had chiefest rule in the Senate, the which should give unto hym al the honours appertayning to Augustus, and the charge of sleynge Julianus, was commytted vnto one of the Tribunes. The same Tribune murdered the feable and miserable olde man (which had purchased vnto him wth money so wreatched an ende) by pynge desolate and abandoned of all persons and makinge vncumly lamentacions. The which when Severus hearde, purposynge in his minde greater matters he toke counsell of apprehendynge all the men of armes which had slayne Vertinar. The which to byg to passe, he set letters vnto the Tribunes Cappatines and centurios exhorting them with many promyses, to perswade the Soldiours of the Cyte to be obedient vnto hym. And he hym selfe sente commandement, that leuyng theyr armure wthyn theyr campe, they shoulde come furthe claddelyke peasible personnes, as they accustomed to goo in Tryumphes, and to celebrate playes. I swere alleageaunce vnto Severus, and conceyving in them selves a singuler hope, shoulde be ready to folowe their newe Emperour. The Soldiours beleanyng this throughe the perswasions of the Tribunes, layed theyr armure aparte, and came fourthe crowned with Laurell in gorgeous garments. Now when they came vnto the army of Severus, he beyng therof aduertysed commaunded them to resort together in the fyerde, as though he wold gently welcome them all. And when they approached the Imperial seate, standing ioyfully together, they were all by a watche worde sodeynly enclosed. For so hadde Severus appointed it that when his soldiours sawe them attentively herkenynge vnto their Prince, they shoulde ennyon them all as yf they were enemyes and wounding, or strykyng no man, wth a compasse enclose them rounde about, onely holdyng fourthe their dartes and speares, that the other for feare of woundes shold not, beyng naked, and felwe, presume to resist those that were armed, & many. Vnto whome he had thus taken and entangled them as it were a toyke of weapons) with a hygh voice and troubled speeche,

rite, he spake as foloweth. You see that we have overcome you as wel, by amyle, and polley, as by strenght. The worde number. We are taken moste easely, & holde without pes of great difficultie, what shalbe done of you that lieth in uer^o vnto my power: ye shalde now here presely as prayes sub^o the p^o tect to our Emperre. If for your mischeuouse facte ye toke a soule sake condigne punishment, ye shal neuer finde it. You diours, haue slayne a godly olde ma and worthy Emperour who your selves shold haue preserued & defended. You haue filthely & shamefully, as it were the possession of a priuate person, & as filchy blurers, solde y^e Romaine Empire shyneng in perpetual glorie, the which our elders ruled in vertue & renowne. And that more is) as moste timorous & cowardly dastardes, you durst not ones defende & succor him, who after that fort, your selues erected vnto the type of dignitie. For thise your heynous offences & horrible wickednes, a thousand tormentes of death are due vnto you, yf a man wolde study for a mete rewarde vnto your desertes. Wherefore what you are worthy to suffer your selves apparantly perceane. Neuer thelesse, I wil abstaine fro shedding of bloode, not folowig your hades. But because law, & equitie prohibith you to garde a Prince, haying violated your othe, & defiled your hades in ciuile & Imperial bloode, in falschenge your allegiaunce & trust, albeit of our bounteous clemencie we pardō you your lynes, & yet do I charge my Soldiours, y^e they vngitde you, & after they haue dispoiled you fro your armure, they let you go naked, your selves I commaund to depart far hence. And furder I ordeine, swere, & denouce, yf any of you be fonde hereafter wth a hundred miles of the Cite, he shal lose his lyfe. Incōtinently after this sentence pronounced, the Illiria Soldiours ran vnto thā, & after they had bereaued fro the their short skelines decked in golde & siluer, (which they ware for proude pompe and bragging brauerie) & taking fro the by violence theyr purses with their other appaile & toke of warriours they dismissed them so rifeled of al they had. They seing theselles thus betrayed, & by crafty disceite so apprehended, toke their fortune paciēti. For what shold they being naked against armed, and fende against many?

The Historie of Herodian

They departed therefore bewailing them selues, and interpreting the release of theyr lyues a greate good turne bestowed vpon them. But yet they lamented that thei came furthe vnarmed, and so offered them selues to be shamefully taken. Nowe Seuerus vsed another wyle agaynst them. For (fearynge that they beinge naked and spoiled, wold in a desperacion retourne vnto their campe, and fall to harnes) he sente the strongest and mosse experte of all hys Souldyours by other wayes and pathes: commaundynge theym to enter into the voyde tentes, and leasynge on the armure there leste, to forbidde them thentry when thei retourned. This punishment therfore had the murderers of Pertinax. Then Seuerus with the reste of hys hostes apparaled with armure wente vnto Rome. The Romanes were at the fyrste syghte affrayed, and drede full, ponderynge in theyr myndes hys stoutenes and fortune. The Senate and all the people crowned with Lawrell receaued hym (as the fyrste of all menne and Emperours) bringer to passe of so great and weighty a matter withoute bloudesthedde or busie trouble. All qualtyes helpe were meruaylouse in hym: specially the sharpnes of his wytte, his sufferaunce of labour, and prompte audacitye of good hope in enterprysynge of weightie affayres. After the people had receaued hym with voyouse acclamacions, and the hole senate welcommed hym at the gates of the Cytie, he vyleted the temple of Iupiter, made there his sacrifice and sacrilegious palayce. The next day, he came into the Coorste: where he made an oracion with a good countenaunce, and embraced al menne openly and pruely, sayeng he came vnto the Citty to reuenge the death of Pertinax. And promysed to erecte the fundacions of the estate of Senatours and nobles of Rome as longe as he weres, excepte he were by iudgemente condemned: all pphetshankes and false promoters beinge dyspatched away. And that he would folow Marcus Steppes in governinge the Emppre: hauing not onely the surname

(ba

The seconde booke.

Fo. xxix

he said) of Pertinax, but also his full mynde & intent. By this talke he wan hym selfe muche fauoure. But many of the aunceient men, knowynge his accustomed subtilty, tolde theyr frendes pruely, that he was a deceptfull man, bent vnto fraude, and a meat dissembler, caring for nothing, so that he might obtayn that he thoughte his owne auantage. The whiche report of the Elders experyence dyd afterwarde verifie. Seuerus then remayned but a fewe dayes in the Cytie: but hauynge bestowed on the people many gyftes, and abundantlye rewarded the Souldyours: amongst whome he elected the strongest and balyanteste into theyr places (that were erst dyscharged) for the garde of hys person, he furthwith prepared hys iourney towards the Dyent, whyles Piger lay still and gaue hys mynde vnto the wantonnes of Antyoche. Thinking it beste to make haste that (beinge vnloked for) he myght oppresse Piger vnparuaied of strengthe to resist hym. Wherefore he commaunded the Souldiours to make them selues ready, and after he had gathered together bandes of men from euerys coaste, mustered of Seuerus all the yowthe in Italye, sente for the residue of the Illyrian armie remaining in Thrace, and with no lesse diligence gotten a great nauy and fylled all the Italian galleyes of.iiij. orders with Souldyours armed, he brought to gyther with incredyble celeritye abundance of al necessaries. For he knew well that there needed a great power agaynst vnacions, inhabytyng the parte of the earthe that is opposyte vnto Europe: all the whiche dyd with one mynde folowe and fauoure Piger. Therefore after this sorte dyd Seuerus apparayle hys armie to the warre. But the man, beinge prouident of a forecallyng wytte, suspected muche the armie of Englande, who were verye myghty, and warrellyke, and of them was ruler one Albinus, a manne of the ordre of Senatours, whiche had bene traded in greate wealthe of all richesse and pleasures. This man Seuerus thoughte good to wyne by craft vnto hym, leass yf the same, dyspyred with hys ryches,

3.iii.

hynred

The hystorie of Herodian

hynred; armye and renoume (all prompte prouacatyons to couetyng of the myrrour) woulde challenge the domynion of all thynges vnto hym selfe; and whyles Seuerus were bulged wth the warres in the wynte, take possession of Rome, not farre dyschaunte from Englande. And therefore he determyned to allure vnto hym wth a colour of honoure, Albynus beyng synple, lyghte of credyte, and beleuyng Seuerus, for that in hys letters myssyues he protested all thyng by solempne othe. And therfore calling hym Cesar, and promysynge hym the partycypacyon of hys Empryre, he preuented hys ambecyon. He sente lettres also vnto hym full of gentle commendacyons, whereby he desyred hym chyeftly to take vpon him the charge of the myrrour, sayinge that it needede suche a noble manne, and of suche dyscreate age as he was. Hym selfe (he sayde) was olde and bereid to the golwe, and hys twoo sonnes verpe yonge. The whiche Albynus credytyng, accepted gladly the honoure: beyng ioyfull that he obtayned hys desyre wthoute batayle or other trouble. And Seuerus (that al thynges myghte seme more credyble,) sente lettres of lyke tenor vnto the Senate: commaundyng the moneye to be coyned wth the stampe of Albynus pycture, hys Image to be erected, and other honoures to be done vnto hym, whereby he establyshed the truste of hys beneuolence. When he hadde thus prouydently synplyshed thys dysste (beyng oute of feare of the affayres in Englande, and hauyng gathered togyther aboute hym the Illyryan Legyons and all other thynges nedefull) he dyd set forwarde hys hoste agaynst Pyger. As for the places where in hys Journey he arrested, what Oracyons he made in euerye Cytie, what meruaylouse wonders appeared, what Legyons he passed, and synallye what conquestes there were, and what numbers on bothe sides were slayne, the same all Hystoryographers, especyallye the Poetes treatynge of thys matter, and the whole lyfe of Seuerus, do verpe plenteously make mencyon

The seconde booke.

FO. xxx,

mencyon of in theyr Writtes. But I entende to put in wrytyng thynges manifestly knowne vnto me, done by the space of seuentye yeares vnder manye and dyuerse Rynces. And therefore

I wyl touche the chyeftest thynges done

by Seuerus: wthoute or sauoure

saynyng anye thyng (as I

se they haue done whiche

wrote in that age) or

elles ouerskyppe

unspoken

anye thyng that shall

seme worthy

memo-

rye.

The ende of the Se-
conde booke of
Herodian.

I.iii.

CC

The Argumente of the thyde booke of Herodian.



He begynnynge of the Thyde booke dothe treatise of the batailles betwene Seuerus and Piger, and of the preparation of the same. Then after of the death of Piger, of the crueltye of Seuerus which would by Treason haue slayne Albynus, whome he had taken into the rule of them. Consequentlye of the ouerthrowe of Albynus men, and Albynus owne death. Of the byage and expedition made by Seuerus into the Orient, of the dyscorde betwene the twoo brethren Seuerus sonnes, and of the diage made by Seuerus with his Sonnes into England, where he died. And the ende of the Thyde booke treateth of Antoninus, Seuerus eldeste Sonnes crueltye, and howe he sayned for a while to be agreed with his brother Geta. **C.D.**

The

Thyde booke of Herodian.



In the Booke preceedyng we haue at lenght opened the death of Pertinax, the murder of Iulianus, with the comming of Seuerus into the Cytie, and his expedition against Piger. Who (when he suspected no such matter) hearing that Seuerus was in full possession of Rome, taken as Emperour by the Senate, and that the hole Illyrian army was comming against him by lande and Sea, had his mynde wonderfullye troubled, and his courage meruaylouslye daunted. Neuerthelesse he gaue forth with commandement to the Praefydes, and rulers of the Prouinces, to defende and stoppe all their passages, hauens, Porths and Streytes: And sente to the Kinges of Parthia, Armenia, and Atrienta, for ayde. But the Armeny King Atrienta, answered that he would take neither parte, but onlye defende his Realme, at the comming of Seuerus. The Parthian Kinge, at him worde, that he wolde commaunde by commission the nobles of his Realme, to muster and gather their powers togythers: For so was he accustomed when he shoulde make warre, because the Parthians had no mercenary Souldiours, or appointed armye. From the Atrientians were sent him for ayde certayne others, by the Kinge Barles Barlesmius, the whiche then signed in that Realme. The rest of his power, he liued of the Souldiours that were present, and many he gathered amonges the people, especially of the Antiochiens (who being through the lightnes of their age, and the fauor of Piger that red) dyd more rashly, then prudentlye, proffer them

h. i. selues

Taurus

**Cappado
cia Cilicie**

**Byzanti-
um.**

Thrace.

Propontis.

Asye.

Piletum

Cyzicu

selues. Nigier then stopped with a myghty munition, and stronge wall, the strettes, and broke places of the mountaine Taurus: thinking that the same rockye and scape Hyll, wolde be an assured stronge defence vnto the Dyente. For Taurus riseng in great height betwene Cappadocia, and Cilicia, dothe denyde the nations, inhabitynge the Septentrion, and the Dyente. He set also a Garriso in Byzantium, which was the goodlyest Cite of all Thrace, and at that tyme flourishing with strengthe and rycheesse. For beyng sette in a narrowe gulfe of the See Propontis, it receaued tribute, and fythe from the water, and posseltyng on the other syde large and fruytfull felde, gate lucre by both these Elemētes. And therfore Nigier thought it best to strengthe this towne, that the shippes might be prohibited passage thowge those strenghtes out of Europe into Asye. This Citie was compassed with a stronge and mighty wall, builded of four square stone of Piletum, with so small and streight ioyntes, that a man would not iudge it of many pieces, but all of one continuall stone. And yf a man behelde the ruine at this present remainyng, he would wonder, eyther at the arte of them whyche fyrste buylded it, or at the strenght of them whyche destroyed it. After this sorte therfore, dyd Nigier order hys affayres, wylth berpe ware, (as he supposed) and circumspecte counsell. Seuerus on the other part, made all the hast that myght be, with his armye and prouisiō, resting in no place. And hearynge that Byzantium was fortified wylth a garrison of souldiours, and knowyng it also to be a berpe stronge towne, he tournd vnto Cyzicum. When this was declared vnto Amilianus he gouernour of Asye, vnto whome Nigier had committed the charge and chiefe rule of the warre, he remoued vnto Cyzicum also, leadyng with hym all the Legions, whyche eyther Nigier hadde sente, or hymselfe, mustered. When it came to strokes, after certayne skirmishes egerly foughte, the victorie finally fell to Seuerus: and all the hoste of Nigier was slayne, and putte to flight. Whereby the hartes of Dyentall enbaryntes

stantes were abated, and the Allyrians verpe muche encouraged. Many the were, that thought Nigier to be in the beginning of the batayle betrayed by Amilianus. And for prouoof of their opinion, some of them sayde that he equyde Nigier, disdainyng that he, who a lytle before was hys successour in Syrie, shold now not onely be hys superiour, but also hys Soueraygne, and Emperour. Other saye that hys chyldren (whom Seuerus syndyng in Rome, helde hys custode) perswaded him by letters to regarde their life and safety. For this circumspecte Counsell dyd Seuerus put also in vze. It was the blage of Commodus, to deteyne with him, the children of those whiche had the charge to gouerne the prouinces, as pledges of their faithfull alleagiance and loyaltye. And therfore Seuerus, as soone as he was made Emperour, (whyles Iulianus yet lyued) sente certayne into the Citie to steale priuely hys chyldren, lest they shoulde be in anye other mans custode. And as soon also as he entred in to Rome, he caused to be apprehended all the chyldren of the Capitaynes, and of all other which bare any comen offyce in all the Dyente, and Asye, to the ende, that by those hostages, he myghte cause the Chieftains of Nigier, for the sauegarde of their chyldren, to betraye theyr master: or elles, yf they remayned faithfull, it myghte lye in hys power, to auenge hys anger against them in slaying of theyr chyldren. Nowe Nigiers souldyours beyng dyscomfyted at Cyzicum, dedde euery manne as faste as he coulde: some escapyng by the Mountaynes of Armenye, and some comyng to passe Taurus into Asye, & Gallatie, that they myghte put them vnto in places of munition. Then marched the Armye of Seuerus by the plaines of Cyzicum, into Bythinia the nexte region. But when the same was spredde, that Seuerus hadde the victorie, a sodeyne sedition, invaded the Cyties there aboute, not so moche thowge anye hatred, or anye tye, they bare vnto the Emperours, as thowge mortal contention amonge them selues.

Armenie,
Taurus
Asye.
Gallatie
Bythinia.

The

The same was an olde accustomed vice of the Grecians, who (whyles they were at dyscencion wythin them selues, and endeoured to destroy euery man that excelled in dignitie, had now consumed all Grece. And being wythin the selues wzne and wasted, were first made Captyues and slaues vnto the Macedons, and after the bondemen and iudges of the Romaynes. That pestiferouse calamitie of debate and dyscencion, bered notable and flourishing Cyties in our tyme. For immediatly after the battayle at Cizicum in Bythynia, the Picomedians reuolted vnto Seuerus, seding hym Ambassadors, to promyse hym they woulde receaue his armye, and submytte them selues vnto hys gouernaunce. On the other syde, the Syrians stirred with rancor and hatred of them, fauoured Pyger, entrextayning hys Souldiours, as well those whiche were escaped from the fylde, as them whiche he had sent to desede Bythynia. Out of these Cities, the Souldiers, as oute of their Campes, encountred, and skirmished togethers: and after a greate battayle foughten, Seuerus obtayned the vpper hande. The Souldiours of Pyger beyng from thence also dyscye, fledde vnto the freaytes of Taurus, and defended the enclosed mountains. But Pyger, (leauing there as greate a Garryson, as he thoughte nedefull) went him selfe vnto Antioche, to leuie an other hooft of men, and moze money. In this whyle the Armye of Seuerus departed oute of Bythynia and Galatie, entered into Cappadocia, and beganne to assaulte the Bulwarkes, and munitions there. Where they were wyth many sorowes and labours afflicted, the waye beyng verpe narowe, and sharpe, and they which stode aboue, throwing stones, and moke sperfly fyghtinge, and by that meanes fewe keppng backe a greate number. For the passage is wonderfull straye, whereof the one syde is fortifyed wyth a huge and hyghe Roche, and the other is full of waters, falling verpe swyftely downe from the steape hylls. And Pyger had besydes strenghtened it with a mighty and strong wall, that therby, hys enemy myghte on euery syde be forbydden entrie.

In

In the meane tyme, whyles these thynges were in doynge in Cappadocia, the sedicion of certayne Cyties, began to styre wyth like dyscoid. That is to wete, the Cytie of Laodicia in Syria, abhorring the Antiochiens, and the Cytie of Tyre in Phenicia, detesting the Berinthians. The whiche twoo Cyties hearyng of Pygers dyscoidytur, toke downe all his honours, & Images, & made ioyful acclamacions vnto Seuerus, wherof when Pyger, beyng busye at Antioche, was certified, albeit he were at other tymes of a meeke nature, and gentle dysposicion, yet beyng iustly moued with their vnturth and reuolte, he sent vnto bothe the Cities, all the Mauritanian Slingers that were in hys seruyce, and wyth them a compaigne of archers, whome he comaunded to slea euery one they encountered, and to destroy and burne the Cyties selues. And cruelly, the Moores (being a nacyon naturally sterce, and cruell, couetyng slaughter, sturdy in enterprises, and lyke me desperate, despising all daunger of death) dyd sodeynly oppresse the Laodicians: and (hauynge tormented the people there wyth all kynde of crueltye, and ransaked the Cytie) departed from thence vnto Tyre. The whiche (after they had despoiled euery man of his substance, and comytted muche murder) they wholly burned and rased to the earth. Whyles these cruell actes were thus executed in Syria, and whyles Pyger was busied in waging and mustering an other armie, Seuerus Souldiours besyged the munycion of the mountayne Taurus: beyng very penyse, and wythoute hope of vyctorye, for that it was by it selfe myghty and inpyregnable, and defended also wyth the steape & hygh hyll. But when they were now wearyed, and theyr enemyes restynge in safetie, sodeynly loo in the nyghte powzed downe vehement shoures, whiche fylled all places with snow and rayne, (as commonlye in Cappadocia the winter is very rough and tempestuous, chiefly at the mountayne Taurus: wherby sodayn brooke brast forth wyth a meruaylous troublsome streame, and beyng letted from hys ryghte course (for the munycion stop-

Laodicia
& Tyre
were
destroyed.

B. iii.

ped

The Historie of Herodian.

Micus
Sinus.

Theatre

Darius.
Alexander

Alexan-
dria.

The bat-
tyle be-

ped bys passage) it wared more huge & violent, so that when the wall (nature ouercomminge arte) could not sustayne so myghtye a byrnt, the ioyntes beynge by lytle and lytle loused, and the foundacions from their places remoued, & freame made to it selfe open way. When the garrison, whiche garded the entree, ones that perceyued, dreading least they should be by their enemyes enclosed, (no staves or defence to the contrarye remainyng, as soone as the water were asswaged) they forsoke theyr fractions, and made shifte for theym selues by flyght. Then the Seuerian Souldiours reioysed, and hartened them selues, as though theym moztall Goddes guyded them. And knowing that the place was of theyr enemyes abandoned, they easelye wythoute resistance passed ouer Taurus, and entered into Cilicia. Pyger hearynge hereof, hauinge leuyed an huge armye, (but yet not skylfull of warlike traualle) made greate hast towards them by long iourneies, a wonderfull multitude of men, and almost all the yowthe of Antioche, folowing him as their generall gouernoure, and pryncypall Capytayne, wyth muche myrthe, but nothyng comparable vnto the Allyzian Souldiours, eyther in prowesse, or knowledge of warfare. In this araye they arriued nyghe vnto a place named Sinus Micus, in a myghtye and large playne, the whyche beynge on euerye syde enuoyrned wyth hyghe mountaynes in fourme lyke a Theatre, hadde a steepe banke, extendynge farre alonge by the Sea, as it were a fælde, fasthyoned by nature conueniente to darreigne batayle in. Beas the report is, that in the same place, at a cruell and very bloudy batayle, Darius was by Alexander vanquished, and taken, (then habitantes of the Septentrion then preuayling against the nacions of thozient. There remaineth at this day, as a token & witnes of the same victorie, the Citie of Alexandria, situate vpon an high hyl therby, and a brassen Image of Alexander, by whome the Citie is so named. It chanced besides, that not onely the metynge of Seuerus and Pygers armyes in that place, but theyr fortune was also lyke. For theyr

The thirde boke.

To. xxxiii.

mayned on bothe sydes aboute euerynge tye, readye to wene to the batayle. And they passed ouer the nyght in hope, Seuerus and feare, wythout rest or sleape. And at the Sonne & Pyger. rpyng, the Capytaynes on eyther syde haupnge encouraged theyr Souldiours, ran togither with an incredible stoutenes, as though in that synall batayle, they woulde ende the selfe of theyr hope and feare (for tyme at that season arbitrayng who should be Emperour of Rome. When they had of longe space fiercely foughten, there was so greate slaughter commytted, that the ryuers flowing alonge by the plaine, did run into the Sea with greater aboundaunce of bloud, then of water. Finally the Dyentalles were onerthrowe and discomfited, & the Illirians pursued them at their hackes so nyghe, that many of them beynge wounded, were drenched in the Sea. The other fledde into the high hilles nyghe at hande, where they were by thys pursuers slaine, and with them a great numbere of rurall people, who came togither out of the nerte Cityes and Villages, to beholde the batayle from abone, as from a sure holde and stronge Fortresse. But Pyger hym selfe escaped from the fælde vpon a swyft Courser vnto Antioche, from whence also, (despaynyng of all good successe,) and leynge the people amased and runnyng to and fro, lamentynge wyth howlynges and teares, the deathe of theyr byetherne and chylderne) he furthwyth fledde. And beynge hydden in a certayn village of the same Region, was there found by the horsemen, and beheaded. This ende of life had Pyger, receiuing woorthy reward for his delays, and of Pyger protracting of tyme. A man (as they say) in other thynges very moderate & bygnt. After Pyger was slaine, Seuerus incontynently did put to death all his frendes which either of their own free willes, or by constraint, had sauored him: onely he pardoned the Souldiours, who through feare of Seuerus wyach, were fled ouer Tigre, vnto the Barbarians. And in dede to this was a great multitude escaped. Therby it came to passe, & the barbarous nacions thence forwarde, wared more valiant, & stronge in fight against the Romaines, beynge

The deat
Pyger
Tigris.

being onely expert befoze to shote wyth the bowe frō
theyr hōses, not apparayled in harnesse, or bolde to
fyghte wyth speare, and sworde, but couered wyth
lyghte, and longe garmentes, they did most common-
lye throwe theyr dartes, and shote theyr arrowes in
fleyng awaye. But after that many of the Romayne
Souldoyers, and Artycfers, came to enhabite and
leade theyr lyues in those Regyons, the barbarous
people learned, not onely to weare armure, but also
to forge, and make the same. When Seuerus had sy-
mplyshed his affayres in the Dyente, according to his
owne mynde, he toke an ardent desyre to make warre
vpon the Atrenyan kynge, & to conquere the Realme
of Parthia: bothe the whyche Pyger had befoze allo-
cated vnto hym. But yet desyringe those warres
vntill an other tyme, he begā to inuent by what mea-
nes he myght assuredly establysh the Romayne Em-
pyre to hym selfe and his chyldren. For, Pyger being
dispatched, there remained no moze, sauing onely Al-
brynus, who he reckened woulde do lytle after his
mynde, or stande hym in small steade, the rumour be-
yng alreadye spreadde, that he vsurped the dignyte, &
name of Cesar, ouer arrogantlye: and that manye of
the Senators had wrytten pryncely vnto hym, encou-
ragyng hym to retourne to Rome, whyles Seuerus
were absente and busied in the Dyente: for all the no-
blytpe wysshed Albinus Emperour, because he was
descended of noble and famoule lynnage, him selfe be-
yng a yonge man of great towardnes, and gentle dis-
posicion. All whych ententes when Seuerus knewe,
thynkyng it not good to worke wyth open enmytie,
and manifeste warre, (haupage none occasyon that
myghte seme honest thereunto) he determyned to cry-
cumuente hym with pryncy Treason, and close deceit.
Wherefoze he sente wyth letters of Compyssion, vnto
Albinus, certayne of the moste trustye and faythe-
full Pursuauantes, whyche bled to carye themperiall
letters: whome he commaunded, that hauinge deli-
uered those lettres vnto hym, they should say they had
other secrete matters to declare, so that al other were
commaunded

Albynus.

commaunded to auisaunce. And then gettynge hym
from his garde, they should suddenly murder hym.
He deliuered popson also vnto them, wherewith they
should yf it were possible allure his taster, eyther of
meate, or dryncke, to dyspatche him. But Seuerus
trithe was suspected of Albinus frendes. And there-
foze they admonyshed hym to beware of that false and
desloyall person, full of disceit, & treason. For he was
manifestly knowne to be a periured, and vntreue man:
hauing by their owne chylderne, entyled Pigers Ca-
pitaynes, to betray their maister: And then, after he
had abused their labour, and brought all his purpose
as he wold to passe, & we bothe them and theyr chy-
lderne. Wherefoze by Actes they selues made appa-
raunte his vnfaithful, and noughty dysposicion.
And for that cause Albinus strengthened hym selfe
with a greater and stronger garde then he was accu-
stomed, permitting no messenger sent from Seuerus
to be lette in rashely vnto hym, except he fyrste laide a
syde his weapon, and were thoroughly serched. Now
when the pursuauantes were arriued from Seuerus,
and hauinge openly deliuered their letters, sayed that
they had other secrete instructions, to utter pryncely
vnto hym, Albinus incontynently suspecting the ma-
ter, caused them to be apprehended: And then by seue-
rall examinations hauinge founde out the truth, and
by order perceyued the hole Treason, caused executi-
on oute of hande to be done vpon the offenders. And
prepared hym selfe agaynst Seuerus, as his apparant
enmye. The whyche thinge when Seuerus knewe,
beinge a man of warlike, and cruell nature, he re-
solved, to hynde no lenger the despyte and hatred he
bare to Albinus. Wherefoze he called the hole armie
togethers, and made this oracion vnto them.

A Roman oughte to embayme me of ouer moche
lyghtnes, for that I haue heretofore done, neyther ac-
compte me false, and vngratefull towards hym whō
I reputed for my frende. I haue performed all thynges.
Yea I haue receyued hym into the secretie of my
dominion, beinge now moste perfectly establyshed
The oracion of Seuerus

the which thing a man wyll scarfelye doo to his owne brother. And that whiche you haue vnto me onely despyred, the same haue I with hym participated. But all thiese our bountifull benefices, hath Albinus moste shamefully recompensed, contempnyng oure prowesse, forgetting his allegiaunce, and coueytynge with perill, the hole rule, wherof he myght haue bene partaker without batayle, or contencion. He feareth not y Goddes by whō he hath so ofte swoorne. Neither dothe he consyder, or fauoure your laborious trauayles, whyche you haue wyth so greate renowne and glozpe for our sake sustayned. And assuredly, him selfe wanted not the profites of our successes: yea hadde he obserued his fidelitee, the gretest porcion had ben his. And as a man, yf he be authour of myschiese, shall be accompted vnrightheous, so yf he reuenge nat the iniurye receyued, he shalbe esteamed a coward. When we made warre agaynst Piger, we had not so iuste and lawfull causes of anger, because we hated him, not, as a bereuer, and robber of the pyre, for the same hanging in the myddes, and then wauering in controuerseye, cyther of vs affected, and drew vnto him selfe with equall enclosure. But Albinus, neglecting his loyalty, allegiaunce, and othe, after he hath obtained by our large liberalitee, the honours whiche are onely geuen to our lawfull childzen, had rather become our nopsome enemy, the our frendely familiar. Wherefore, as we betwisyed hym with our manyfolde benefytes of honour, and glozpe, even so, let vs now wyth force, and strength, conuince, and daunte, his trayterous, and feable harte. As for tharmy of that small Ilande, is not able to sustayne or abyde the brunte of your might. For seyng ye haue your selves almoste alone, by your owne valyaunt prowesse, subdued the hole orient, whē wolde doute, but at this presēt thzugh the ioyning of so great power (for here is welnye the hole Romayne armie) you would not ouerthrow and put to flyghte so small a number, who hath serued vnder a man beyng nyther sober, nor valiaunt. Can ytalme: for who is I praye you ignoraunte of his boyluptuose

luptuose lyfe, more agreeable to Hecardes of Swine, the to Legiōs of Southioys. Let vs therfore valiantly set forward agaynst hym, w the stoutenes we haue accustomed, affienge oure selues in the Goddes, (so wickedly by him contempned) as principall guides of oure voyage, and myndefull of the victorions signes by vs heretofore erected, the whiche he hath also utterly despyed. The Seuerus had this moch spoke, incōtinently thole armie pronoyed Albinus their commune enemy: And hauing recyued Seuerus w ioyful acclamacions, & shewed by theyr shoutes their good willes towarde him, thei enuained y mā w an inestimable hope added to his enterpryse. Wherefore, after he had liberally distributed a poyges the Southioys grete giffes, he led the al forwarde agaynst Albinus: hauinge set also a crewe of mē of rife & rafe Bizantium, which Bizantini was yet shut after the receipt of Pigers Southioys. The which Citie being at length by sampue cōquered, destroyed & defaced, the Theater, the hote bathes, & al other goodly buildenges therof utterly destroyed, & it selfe reduced into y forme of a vilage, was giue vnto the Perin Perinthi thias, as Antioche was vnto the Laodiciās. Then he exacted grete somes of money, to repayre the Cityes, which the Pigiā Southioys had bated & despoiled. Hym selfe continued his journey woute intermissiō, not gretly regarding y helthe, or any painefull labor. For he was equally pacted of colde & heate, trauailing ofte times bareheaded, in the bytter & sharpe winter, when the snow fell continually out of y skie. Therby he stirred his Southioys, as with his owne exāple, vnto alacrite of minde, and sufferance of laborious trauailes. For thei were not cōstrained to abide those paines thzugh any feare, or straitte law, & cōmaundement, but rather thzugh a certayne emulaciō, & exāple of their Prince. He sent certayne also before to the freites of the Alpes, and to defende the entrees, and passages into Italie. Now when Albinus heard, that Seuerus made no delaye in the mater, but was eue at hand (being before, as it were in a dreame, & to passyng the tyme in pleasures

pleasures, he was now stricken with a mercuriall
and sodeyne feare. Neuerthelesse he furthwith last-
ched out of Britaine vnto the coste of Fraunce, right
ouer aneasle it, where on the shoze he pyched his
campe, and sente letters vnto the Rulers of the nerte
nacions, desyring them to sende hym money, and vic-
tualles, for the ayde, and sustenance of his armie.
Thei that obeyed his commaundemente, or requeste,
byd moche vnhappely prouyde for them selves, bringe
after the battayle put to deathe with dyuerse terri-
ble tormentes. And those whiche set at naughte his
rule and power (although thei did the same moze hap-
pely, then prudently) yet escaped they without harme
or damage, when as the chaunce and fortune of thyn-
ges dyscerned bothe theyr counsellors. When the Se-
uerian power was entered into Fraunce, the sky-
mpthes were lyght and volant at the fyrste, vntyll at
length, the grete conflict was geuen at Lions, a great
and riche Citie. For Albinus remayninge hym selfe
within the Citie, sente furthe his Souldiours to the
bataile. And when y two armies toynd hadde to hade,
the batayle endured a longe space with equall strenght
on eyther syde, so that the fortune of the victorie de-
pended doubtfull. For the Britons were nothyng in-
feriour to the Illirians, eyther in stoutenes of Ro-
make, or greedines of slaughter. Thus in the fyrste on-
set, the frantes of two moche valiaunte armys, did to
neyther syde encline, or ones recule. Yea (as manye
Authours of the same tyme (who wrote it nat for any
perciall fauoure, but accordyng to the truthe have
lette in memoire,) the whyng of Albinus Armys
was the better, and of moze strenght, agaynst the
bande that Seuerus ledde: so that he fledde, and fell
from his horse, and throwenge awaye his cote ar-
mure, hydde hym selfe. But whyle the Britons pur-
sued, reioysyng euen as perfecte Conquerours, so
deynlye, appeared Letus one of Seuerus Capitay-
nes, with a freshe Crewe of men: who was repro-
ued and yll spoken of by the Souldiours, as though
he hadde of purpose howred, for to see the chaunce
of

The ba-
taye be-
twene
Seuerus
& Albin
The En-
glishmen
valiaunte
warriors

Letus.

of the batayle, protracted the tyme, and detained them
from settynge forward, that he myghte thereby
haue raught the Romayne Emperre to hym selfe. For
he moued not a foote towardes the fyeelde, before he
was certifyed of Seuerus overthrowe. Whiche sus-
pycon, the happe afterwarde ratified. For after al
thynges were let in orde, and Seuerus was at beas-
tes ease, although he beneficallly rewarded all his
other Capitaynes with great and riche giffes, yet be-
yng vnpdesfull of Letus desoyaltie, and Treason, he
put hym (as was caryente) to deathe. But these
thynges were done afterwarde. Then (as we before
reherced) at Letus arryual, the Seuerians recone-
red perfyte hope, and Seuerus hym selfe was put vpon
his horse, and gyrted with a robe of purple. And se-
yng the Albinians (who thoughte them selues bycto-
ryous banquishers) scattered abroad oute of orde,
this freshe bande of men sodenly set vpon them. And
fynallye (after a lytle resistence) compelled them to
turne theyr backs and fle away, whome beyng
ouerthrowen and dyspersed, the Seuerians pursued,
and entred into the Citie. The number of them that
were on eyther parte slayne, is dyuerselye leste in me-
moire, as it pleased the wyters of that age. Dute of
hand than was the Citie of Lyons ransaked, burnt,
and destroyed, and the head of Albinus stryken of, and
broughte to Seuerus. Thus were two notable victo-
ries obtained, in y East North. So that there is no
thyng, that a man may compare, vnto the contency-
ons and factes of Seuerus: yf he consyder, eyther the
multytude of men, the rysing vp of nacions, the nu-
bre of batayles, or elles the lengthe, and spedy celerite
of iourneyes. In dede, the affayres of Cesar agaynst
Pompeius, (eyther of them havyng to his assistance
the Romayne Souldiours) were great, and merui-
lous: so were those of Augustus agaynst Anthony.
us, or Pompeius sonnes. And so were the batayles
bothe Civile, and foreyne, betwene Sulla, and Ma-
rinus. But a man shall not easily fynde suche an other
as this: who dispatche awaye three Emperours
L.iii. alreadye,

The deat
of Albin

Cesar
Pompey
Augustus
Antonius
Silla
Parius

The historie of Herodian

The noble alreadye possessed of the domynyon, who circumnec-
ble actes sed with fraude and couline the Citie armye whiche
of Deu- garded Rome selfe, and the Senate house: who also
rus. procured one of the Dynces to be murdered wpythin
thempervall Palayce, destroyed an other in the Dy-
ent, (whych obtained the chiefe gouernement, & was
erft by the Romaines taken as Emperour) & finally,
broughte into his subiectyon the thynde, whiche was
endued with the name, honour, and aucthority of Ce-
sar. This ende of life had Albin^o, enioying but a smal
while his mortall and bloudye dignitie. After whose
death Seuerus powred out al the Irons crueltie, and
fyerce wraich of his minde, vpon the frendes & allies of
Albynus. And fyrst haupnge sente hys heade vnto the
Citie, and commaunded that it shoulde be fastened o-
penly vpon an highe gybber, in the latter eande of an
Epistle, (wherin he certifyed the people of his victo-
rye) he wrote thys also, that he sent Albyn^o head vnto
Rome of purpose to be looked on, to thetent, they shold
take example euidente, what them selues shoulde lyke-
wise suffer. Then after he had set in omdre thassayres
of Byrtayne, deuided into. ii. partes thadministracy-
on of thole yle, and appealed all Fraunce, accordyng
(as he thought) to hys owne mynde, and put to deathe
all Albynus frendes, (whom eyther free wil, or neces-
citie hadde ioyned vnto hym) he set forwarde im-
mediately towarde Rome: leadyng thole armye with
hym, to thetent he might seme y more terrible. And
haupng fynished his iourney with swyft spede, as he
accustomed, being enemye mortall vnto Albyn^o fren-
des, he entered into the Citie, where al the people met
& receiued him, w great reuerence, & ioyfull shoutes.
And thole Senate togithers welcomed him. Notwith-
standing, feare had greatly astonied some of them, for
they were sure, y he wolde not spare the, being of hys
own nature ouer outragious, & the, hauing probable
occasions of hatred against the. After he was entred
into the Temple of Iupiter, he there finished y accosto-
med rites of sacrifice, & the retozned to thimperial pa-
layce. Anone after he distributed liberallye amonges
the

The thyrde booke.

Fo. xxxviii.

the people riche gistes, in token of victozy, rewarded y
souldiours w great summes of money, & gaue the many
thinges they neuer receiued before. For fyrste he aug-
mented the substaunce of their coyne, & permitted them
to weare ringes of golde, & euery of the to kepe a wo-
ma in his house. Al which being dysagreeable to war-
like discipline, seamed theretofoze vnpzofytable to
the which were euer pzest & ready to the batayle. And
he fyrst of all other altered the austeritie & hardnes of
theyr liuing, the toleraunce of trauailes, and all their
accustomed reuerence towarde their Capitaynes:
hauing brought y Souldiours acquainted w the greddy
gaping for money, and the loue of y Citie comelines.
When he had after this sort, set these affaires in good
oordre, as him selfe supposed, he came at length into the
Senate house: And there sityng in theperial Throne
he began with a cruell ozacion, to detecte the frendes
of Albynus, shewing furch, certaine of their priuy Co-
pistles which he had found with Albynus. He reprov-
ed some, for that they bestowed many bouiful gistes vpon
him: And menaced al other, which eyther fanozed
thozientalles, or were of familiare acquaintaunce w
Albynus. By these meanes, he byd wythout respecte,
put to deathe, euery notable and pzudente Senatour,
al other y bare any rule in the prouynces, or excelled
in byrth, or ryches: auengyng hym selfe, (as he made
semblaunte) vpon hys enemyes, but in deace, coue-
tousenelle was the onely cause, wherw, he of al other
Emperours was most intached. For as he gaue place
to no man (were he euer so commendable) in patience
of mynde, perseneraunce in laboures, and glozye of
warfare, euen so, beyng aboue all measure addicted
vnto auarpye, he heaped treasure, thzoughe vniuste
murders, executed vpon euerye tryflyng cause, & some-
time without anye at all, enioying thempyre, rather
thzoughe force, and feare, then anye beneuolence, or
good wyll of the people. Fewertheles, at the fyrste, he
would seme familiare, & affable, in settyng out gorge-
ous shewes, and pageauntes of al sortes, w the being
of an. C. cruell beastes at a tyme, the whych he had
sent for, out of our owne, and Barbarouse Regyons.

He gaue besides, ryche rewardes, and published a sumptuous game, gettinge from all partes ballyaunte Champpons, and cunninge wrestlers. We sawe also in the tyme of hys Keygne, sundry playes of all sortes, set furthe in all the Theatres, with sup- plycatyons, and watches, lyke the sacryfices of Ce- res. The same are called Seculer, celebrated (as they re- porte) at the ende onely of every thyrde age. And the common Cryers went throughe al the Citie, and all Italye, callinge all men to the Playes, whiche they neuer sawe before, nor thereafter shoulde se: signyfy- yng thereby, that the space of tyme betwene the cele- bracion passed, & that was to come, exceded al thage of a man. Now Seuerus, after he had sojourned a while at Rome, and partycypated the regymente of them- pyre wth hys ii. sonnes, perceyving hym selfe to be famous as yet, but by one Cypyle byctorye obtained agaynst the Romayne power, (for the whiche also he had refused to Tryumphe) determyned to become notable, wth the overthowe, and standarde of the Warbarrens. Wherefore, under coloure of reuenging hym selfe upon Warsenius kyng of the Atrenyans, (who had assysted Pygmy he led hys armye into tho- ryent. And there beyng at the verpe poynte to invade Armenia, he was prevented by the kyng thereof, who sente vnto hym wyllynglye, bothe pledges and presen- tes, humblye desyringe, that he myghte entre into frendshyppe, and conclude a peace wth hym. After the whiche done, Seuerus, sayng hys purpose in Ar- menia proceade as hym selfe wylshed, helde on hys iourney towardes the Atrenians. And Agbarus the kyng of the Osrohenians, came also and yelded him selfe vnto hym. And despyrreng hys chyldren as ho- rages, amplified the truste of hys truthe, and loyaly- ty conceived, by lendynge to the increase of hys ar- mye, a greate power of Archers. From hence Se- uerus passed ouer the Realme of Interamna, and the felde of the Albenyans, and made a rode into A- rabye the fertile, from whence come all the sweete & odiferous herbes, whiche we vie for pleasant va- pours,

poys, and perfumes. And hauing there destroyed ma- ny Citie, & villages, and wasted the hole cuntrey, he entred into Atrenia. There he besyged the Citie of Atlas, beyng buylded vpon an high Rocke, copal- sed wth myghtye and stronge walles, and fortified with a wonderfull puyssant garrison of Archers. Wherefore the Seuerian hoste, assaulted this Citie, with all the force they had, and moored to the walles, Towres, & engyns of all sortes, omittynge nothyng, that might auaille to the assaulte, and batterye of the same. On the other syde, the Atrenyans stoutely de- fended theyr Citie, shootinge, and throwynge downe, arrowes, dartes, and stones, wherewith they gretely bered the Seuerians. They throwe downe also, earthe vessels fylled with certayne wynged, venemous ly- tle beastes: The whiche falling vpon the eyes, and fa- ces of the Seuerians, or elles creapyng by lytle, and lytle, in at the open partes of their bodies, dyd ryghte sharpely styng, and wounde them. The Romayne Souldiours besides were fallen into diseases, beyng vnable, to away with the feruentnes of the ayre there because it was to extremely hote, throughe the conti- nuance of the Sonne: so that by thiese casualties, ma- ny more of them perished, then by the handes of their enemyes. Wherefore Seuerus perceyvinge them all for wearied, and woone, the sieage not prospering, and the hoste receyvinge more damage, and losse, they gayne, or profyt, determyned, before they utterly per- ished, to lede them from thence: very sorrowefull, that they departed, withoute achieuing their enter- ded enterpryse. For beyng theretofore accustomed to wyne the victorie in all batayles, they then accom- pted them selues ouercomen, for that they had not ban- quished. But fortune euermore fauorable vnto them, so prouided, that they retourned not wout any thinge done: but with more fortunate successe, then they lo- bed for. For the hole armye, beyng shyned in sundry vessels arrived not (as they fyrste purposed) at the ha- uen of Rome, but throughe the rage, and vyolence of the waues, were drien to lande in the costes of Parthia

Ctesiphō thian, nat farre from the Citie of Ctesiphon, whereth
standeth the Palayce royal of the Parthienyā Kinge.
Who then liuing in reste, and reckening the warres,
which Seuerus had with the Arcemās, nothing per-
tinent to his charge, did not in that his ydle tranquil-
lity, suspecte, or thinke vpon any peril, or mishappe,
towards hym selfe entended. When the Seueria ar-
mye was, (as I sayd) by behemencie of weather, dri-
uen on lande, at the bankes of this Kovaulme, thei be-
gan oute of hāde, to spoyle and rype all the Cuntrey,
driving befoze them all the herdes of Catel, and floc-
kes of sheepe, thei founde. And burning many villa-
ges in their wape, thei marched by small iorneyes, to
the Citie selfe of Ctesiphō, in the which the great Ar-
tabanus then laye. And there, sendenge the Barba-
rous people unpurueyed of defence, thei slew all that
resisted, sacked the Citie, and carped away as Capti-
ues, bothe women, and children. The king hym selfe,
with a fewe horsemen, only escaped. His treasure, or-
namentes, and householde stuffe, the Seuerians, as
conquerours, sealed vpon, and then retourned. Thus
Seuerus, moze thughe fauorable fortune, then pru-
dent policie, obtayned the Parthian Conquest. Af-
ter the prosperous atchieuinge wherof, he sente vnto
the Senate, and people of Rome, gloriouse Letters,
full of offentaciō: & Tables, wher in were gorgeouslie
paynted, and at length sette out, his myghty batailles,
and valiaunt victories. For the which the Senate de-
creed many honours vnto him, and gaue him the sur-
names of the naciona by hym, befoze Conquered. In
the meane whyle, after this hadde in the orientall af-
faires, he retourned towards Rome: hauig his two
Sonnnes, (who were then of ripe age) in hys Compa-
nie. And after he had finished his iorney, comitted the
rule of y^e prouinces, vnto those which lyked hym best,
and mustered the Illians, & Pannoniens, he finally
entered into the Citie with Triumpe. The people re-
ceyued hym wth ioyfull shoutes, and all other Ceremo-
nies to the same appertaining, vnto whome he graun-
ted certayne extrao^{dinary} holpe dayes, sacryfices,
and

Arta-
nus.

Illians
Pannoni-
ans.

and shewes. And hauinge gyuen amonges theim
great gistes, hym selfe also solemnized sundrye play-
es, for his victorie. After this he remained a longe
tyme at Rome, late oftentymes in iudgements, vpon
the Cytye controuersies, and gaue hys hole mynde to
enfructe hys chyldren. But they, beyng yonge men,
had corrupted their dispositions, wth sensuall plea-
sures of the Citie, and ouermuche delvte in riotting,
and bauleing. The Wetherne also fell at varpaunce
wthin theim selues, thev debate risynge of childishe
contencion, and boyishe braule, in settynge fourthe
cockefightes, & quaplesyghtes, and the wrestlyng of
lytle hoves. For what soeuer thei had seene, or hearde
in the Theatre, thei euer lyked it diuersly, the one not
louyng, that the other did; but the thinge whiche was
acceptable vnto thone, incontinently became odious to
the other, thev Parasites, and seruantes, egging the
to discencion, & flatering them, to thentert, thei might
allare thev maisters to thev owne noughty wyl, &
appetites. Whereof when Seuerus hearde, he ende-
uoured to reconyle them, & to correcte their corrup-
ted maners. And then vnto Bassianus (who at that
tyme enioyed thimperiall dignities & honours, had
receyued the surname of Marcus, beyng called Se-
nerus Antoninus, & was his eldest Sonne) he gaue
to wyse the doughter of Plautianus, the Lord great
Mayster of his householde. This Plautianus, being
(as it is reported) by byrthe of base estate, was detec-
ted, and founde gyltye of sedicion, and other notori-
ous crimes, & therfore punished wth banishment. But
he was Seuerus countrey man, borne in Aphyque,
and as some coniecture, nyghe of kyndred vnto hym,
but as other surmyse, rather gratefull vnto hym in
vncypous luyng, thraughe the floure, and bewtye of
his youth. Hym did Seuerus enhaile fro simple and
low degre, vnto wonderfull abundance of Treasure.
And giuing vnto hym the goodes of many that were
condempned, enriched him aboue all other refraynyng
only, from the admytting him into the gouernaunce
of the empyre. The whyche rychesse, and libertye, Plau-
tius be abusynge, omitted no kynde of crueltye, in doing.

The de-
bate of
Seuer^s
two Son-
nes.

Bassian^s

Plautia-
nus.

Thinsol^e

what pleased hym: and became moze outragvous, then anye Wyce theretofoze ragynge. His doughter (as is sayde) dyd Seuerus gyue for wife vnto his Sonne. But Antonyne hym selfe was nothyng ioyful of the same, enforzed thereunto, rather by necessity, then good wyll. For to the vttermoste he detested the mayden, and her father: so that he bled neyther one bed, nor one house wyth her, in suche wyse abhorrynge her, that he dayly menaced, to put her father & her vnto deathe, as soone as by hym selfe he should possesse thempyre. The whiche when she had estones reported vnto her father, and opened howe greately she was of her husbände disdained, she kyndeled the mā maruaylously vnto wythe. So that Plautianus (perceyving on the one syde Seuerus to be decrepite and aged, and many tymes vexed wyth displeases, especiallye the goutte, and on the other syde Antonius to be a fyerse, skoute, and cruell yonge man, became beary fearefull of hys threatenynges, and determyned to commyt some notable myschpyse, befoze hym selfe perpyshed. There were manye thynges, whych enflamed hym wyth ardente ambycyon of thempyre. That is to weete, hys aboundaunce of rychesse (the lyke whereof, no pryuate person at any time theretofoze possessed) the obedyence of the Souldyours, the great honour he enioyed amonges al the Romaines, and the ornamente of apparaylle, wherein he wente abrode. For he ware a garmente called Latus Clauus, and hadde bene twyse Consult. He ware also a sword, and all other tokens of promocyon, and dygnitie: beyng wheresoeuer he went so terrible, that he was not onely vnapproched vnto of any man, but also, yf anye by sodayne chaunce happened to meete him, they woulde turne theyr faces from hym. And what way so euer he made hys Iourneye, he had certayne Alshers going befoze him, whiche comaunded euery man to auopde the stretes, and no man to be so hardye, as to beholde hym, but to turne awaye theyr eyes, and loke vpon the earthe. The which when Seuerus knew, hym selfe toke it not patiently: but grnd-

ged

ged greatlye thereat, so that he dimynished muche of Plautianus auctoritie, and endeuored to perswade hym, to abate somewhat, at the least wise, of his so insolent arrogancy. But Plautianus being therof impatient, doubted not to compasse by conspiracy, & Treasō, thempyre selfe: and therfoze ymagined thys dyt. There was a certayne Tribune named Saturninus, Saturnus, whiche chiefly reuerenced Plautianus, and albeit all ninus, other did so likewise, yet dyd he moze and moze crepe into his fauoure, by a greater token and apparaunce of honouryng hym. Thys man Plautianus reckened to be hys most trusty and saythfull frende, and suche, as onely woulde kepe secrete, and close, hys counsell, and erecute, what so euer he should commaunde him. And therfoze sent for him in the euentide, and hauing remoued al other aparte, sayd these wordes vnto him.

¶ Nowe is (q he) the time come, wherein thou muste make perfect, thy loue, & obeylaunce towarde me (of son of the whiche thou haste hytherunto shewed euident proofe) and wher in I may suffyciently recōpence thy desertes. The choyle is gyuen vnto the, whyther thou wilt eschew my daunger, whom thou now seest, and become ballalle vnto my power, or ellis oute of hande perpysh, w the worthy punishment of a stubburne to make. Feare thou not the greatnes of the enterpyse, neither dismay thy selfe with the names of the perors. It is lawfull for the, to go alone into the Chambers, where they slepe, & as if I diddest retorne to the night watche, thou maist easely without any interruptiō, atcheue what thou despyrest. There is nothyng elles wher in thou shouldest longer awaye for my comaundement. Go thy way now into the courte as thoughe thou haddest some pryue & weighty message of mine to do, and there, as becommeth a valiaunt man, murder that olde manne and Boy, wythin eyther of theyr Chambers. And as thou arte partaker of the daunger, euen so, after it is ended, thou shalt enioy parte of the greatest honoures. These wordes albeit they somewhat assnyed the Tribunes mynde, yet dyd they not bitterlye confounde and expell hys counsell.

¶.iii.

But

But as a man of a prompt and ready wytte (for he was a Syrian borne, and for the most parte, then bytauntes of the Dyent are of practe and sharpe iudgements) perceyvinge the frantike folwe, and mere madnes, of Plautianus, and knowynge also what he was able to do, durst not reprehende any thyng that was spoken, leasse hym selfe shoulde furthwith be slayne. But saynyng that all he hadde hearde, was acceptable vnto hym, fyrste he saluted Plautianus as Emperoure, and then requyred a lybell of hys hande concernynge the commaundemente of the sayd murdre. For it was the blage of Tryauntes, when they hadde wythoute lawfull iudgement, commaunded anye manne to be put vnto deathe, to gyue the charge therof, wyrtten in some lytell boke, leasse there shoulde no argumente, or prooffe, remayne of the same appoyntmente. Wyth that Plautianus, blynded wyth ouer muche couetyse, deliuered vnto the Trybune a boke, and sente hym towardes the murdre, wyllynge hym that as soone as he had slayne bothe the Dynces, befoze the facte were publyshed, he shoulde sende for hym, to the entente he myghte be sente wythin thempervall Palayce, befoze any man hearde of hys possessyon of thempyre. Upon this commaunte the Trybune departed from Plautianus, and as he was woute, passed freelye throughe all the Courte: where, ponderynge wyth hym selfe and perceyvinge howe vneasye it were for one manne to murdre the two Dynces, lyng in sundry Chambers, he fyrste wente to Seuerus lodgynge, and there wylled certayne of hys pryue Chamber, to helpe hym to the speache of the Emperoure, saynynge that he broughte newes, whych appertayned to the Emperours sauegarde. They made spedye relacyon hereof vnto Seuerus, who furthwith commaunded the Trybune to be let in. And he beyng entered befoze the Emperoure sayde these wordes. I am Treason come hyther (O Emperoure, or he) as he that sente disclosed, me hymselfe supposeth to murdre youre personne, But

But as I my selfe bothe wyll, and wyl, to be the authoure of a greate benefyte and the preseruacyon of youre healtie. Plautianus lyng in awayte wyth Treason for thempyre, hath appoynted me to murdre bothe you, and youre Sonne. And that not onely in wordes, but in wyrtynge also, the Testymonye whereof is this boke. And in dede, I promysed hym to accomplishe that he commaunded, leasse yf I reiected it, an other woulde haue taken it in hande. But nowe I am here presente, to bewraye the matter vnto you, leasse hys presumptuous Trecherie, shoulde oppresse you vnwares. Notwithstandynge, that the Trybune spake these wordes wyth aboundaunce of teares, yet dyd not Seuerus at the fyrste credyte it, so muche was the memozye of Plautianus loue towardes hym, syred, as yet in hys breste: yea, he suspected all the matter too be contrived of a purpose, thynkyng that hys Sonne, who abhorred Plautianus, and detested hys doughter, had Imagyned this craftye Couyne, and mortall slaunde agaynst hym. Wherefoze, haunynge called hys Sonne vnto hym, he beganne to rebuke hym, for that he hadde denyed suche myscheyse agaynst hys frende, and well wylle. But Antonyne at the fyrste, sware, and protested, that he was ygnoraunte of all this busynesse, and afterwardes encouraged the Trybune (whom perswaded in hys tale, and shewed furthe the booke) to declare the hole Treason. Than the Trybune (perceyvinge intoo howe greate daungere he was entered, not ygnoraunte howe muche in fauoure Plautianus was wyth Seuerus, and knowynge precysely, that yf the Treason laye hydden, and the matter not throughe proved, him selfe shoulde receyue extream and cruell deathe,) spake thus vnto them. My Soueraigne Lordes (or he) what moze ample argumente or perfecte prooffe do you seke hereof? permytte that I maye go furthe of the Courte, and

and by some secreete and trusty person certifie Plautianus, that all his commaundement is fulfilled. He beleuyng it, wilbe here out of bande, to occupie the Palace as boide. The shal it be your partes, to examine, and trye oute the truth. And after he had thus muche spoken, he chose a faythfull, and trusty persone vnto hym, whych should in his name exhort Plautianus, to make haste and come furthwith to the Court, sayinge bothe the Princes were slayne: for it behoued hym, before the deade were published amonges the people, to be within the Palace: that therby, occupye the Principall Tower, and establishege thempyre vnto hym selfe, all men should maugre their hartes obey hym as one not entringe into thempyre, but as already possessed therof. Plautianus crediting this matter, was puffed with a meruailouse presumption and hope. And putting on hym a thyzte of mayle for the sure defence of hys bodye, aboute the eueninge of the same daye ascended into hys Chariotte, and made haste towardes the Court with a fewe whych were present attending vpon hym, who thoughte he hadde bene sente for by the Emperours, about some earnest and weighty busynesse. And when he was wythoute let of any manne, entered into the Palapce, the porters beyng ignorant, what the matter mente the Tribune mette hym, saluted hym as Emperoure by collusion of purpase imagined, toke hym by the hand, and ledde hym into the Chamber, where he seigned that bothe the dead Emperours Corpes laye. Nowe hadde Seuerus appoynted certayne of hys Garde to laye handes vpon hym, as soone as he were commen in. But when Plautianus, hauinge at that instaunte other salpes in his heade, was entred into the Chamber, sawe the two Emperours there standyng, and perceyued hym selfe apprehended, beyng wyth that so greate a matter, very sore agasse, he began humbly to entreate, and desyre pardon, affirminge that all thys dyfite was forged vniustly, of malice against him. The Seuerus reponed hym, rehersyng the manye folde benefites, and honors, he had bestowed on hym.

And

And Plautianus replyed agayne, repetyng the testimonies of hys accustomed truthe, and good wyll towardes the Emperour: wherwith Seuerus began some what to relent, and credite the wordes of Plautianus: vntyll that the thyzte of mayle appeared throughe a slyt of his upper garment. Whiche Antonyne perceyving being a sterne, and fierse yonge man, and thereto sore detestling Plautianus, saied. I wold gladly wete (if he) what answer thou wylte make vnto thiese two pointes. Why camest thou in the euening, vnto them perours vnent for? And what meaneth this thyzte of mayle thou wearest: for who cometh in armure to a Supper or banquet? And hauinge so sayde, he commaunded the Tribune, and those that were present to stabbe hym in with their swordes, and daggers, as a manifest Traitor, and open enemy. And the manynginge no delaye in the matter, executed the Emperours commaundement, slewe the man, and threwe hys body into the hygh waye, to be spurned at, & scorned of the people. This iuste ende of lyfe had Plautianus, a man of insatiable auarice. After this done, Seuerus constituted two Capitaynes ouer the men of armes, and hym selfe moste commonly sojourned in the Suburbes, or elles nyghe the Sea costes of Campania, sitting in iudgement, vpon matters of controuersy in the lawe. And beyng very diligent in Ciuile affayres, chiefly coneyted to haue his childerne traded at Rome with decenre, & honest maners. For he perceiued that theyr myndes were bent vnto playes, and shewes, more vehementlye, then became the state of Princes. Wherby it wold come to passe, that the yonge mens studies, & cotencions, tending to diuerse purposes, their willes also, and appetites woulde become dysagreeable, wher (as it were) certayne bondes of debate, wold be kindled betwene them. But especially Antonyne, after the death of Plautianus, wered terrible vnto all men. Besides that, he compassed wyth all the craft, & ymaginacions, he could deuise, how he might destroy the daughter of Plautianus, hys owne wyfe. But Seuerus sent her with her lytle Sonne, whych he

P.i.

The punishment of Plautianus.

had by Antonine, into Sicellia, with as much riches, as abundantly sufficed, for her meate, and drinke, & other necessities: Ensupng in that point, Augustus, who entreated after the same sort, the Sonnes of Antonius, after he was adiudged a Traitor. Seuerus endeouored in all that he coulde, to reduce hys Sonnes to loue, and conoord, and to reconcyle eyther to other, admonyng them, with auncient Histories, and examles, wherein many calamities, rise thurgh the disoord of Betherne, wer reherfed. He added therunto the Treasure him selfe hadde gathered together, all the Temples filled with money, and the riches, which the encreased daylye of forreyn Tributes, howe the Souldiours, might thurgh that abundaunce, be rayned with ample, and riche gyftes, and how the multitude of armes in the Citie, were augmented foure times, more then they were before, and so greete an armye, solourned mygh the Citie, that no forreyn power (yf a man considered the selfe multitude, or the greatnes of their bodies, or elles the abundaunce of money) coulde be founde comparable vnto them. But all thiese thinges, he sayed, wolde be of none effecte, whiles the two brethren dysagreed & kepte ciuill warre within them selues. With reherfall hereof, and entermedlyng corrections with praier, he laboured, to repress their insolent courages, and to bringe them to an atonement, and conoord. But all was in vaine, for they had throughten the byddes out of theyr mouthes, beyng continually enclyned to the worst. And although the yonge men, thurgh the feruencie of their youth, and immoderate licence, were sturred too much alreadye, vnto delytes of sundrye voluptuose lusses, yet were they neuer redi at their elbowes, flockes of parasites, which allured them vnto diuerse, & contrary dispositions: not only extolling their dissolute vices, but also inuering newe pleasures, wherwith the one myght be pleased, and the other offended. Of the which parasites, Seuerus hym selfe, apprehended many, in the verye ministry of theyr flattery, and therefore dyd put them to death. As the olde man was thus in mynde molested,

with

with the sensuall, and vnhoneste lyfe, and delytes of hys Sonnes, he receyued letters from hys Nephew naunte of Englande, wherby he was enformed, how the barbarouse people rebelled, and wasted thole Region with inuasions, and Commocions. Wherefore, he headed a greater purssuance of men, to resist, and suppress them: there wanted the Emperours presencion and also. Glad was Seuerus hereof: for beyng a man of mutine in his owne nature, greable of renoune, after his victories, in thorient, and Septentrion, and his names by the same obtained, he coueyted to make some Conquest, ouer the Englyshmen. And to lede hys Sonnes, fourthe of the Citie, that being farre from the pleasures therof, they might accustom them selves, to warlike, and sober dyet. Wherefore, he proclaimed his expedition into Britayne, beyng very olde, and sore troubled with the gout, but yet of so valiaunte a frame, as neuer was any yonge man. In hys iorney, he roade moost communely in a horse litter, neuer resting longe in any place. When he had ended his voyage, and passed the Ocean Sea, with as much celeritee as can be thought, he entred into Britayne, mustered his Souldiours, hauing gathered a wonderfull power togethers, and prepared hym selfe to batayle. The Britons, beyng astonied, and agast with this so sodeine arriual, of the emperor, And hearing that so huge, an host was assembled against them, set Ambassadors vnto him, to purge their misdemeanours, & entreate for peace. But Seuerus, makinge delays of purpose, lest he shuld retorne to Rome, wout any thig done, & being very desyrous of the Conquest, & Surname of Britaine, dismissed the Ambassadors home againe, wout any resolute answer, geue to their suite. Him selfe, with circumspecte industrie prepared all thinges expediente vnto the warre. And his chiefest care, was to buyde bridges ouer, and in the marshes, to content hys Souldiours myghte stande and fyghte England in safetie. For manye places in Britayne, are full of watery marshes, thurgh the often slowynge of the water, of the Ocean Sea. By those marshes dyd the Thracians

p. y.

Britons

The Historie of Herodian

The aſſe of the Byſtons ſwymme and ſkympe therein wꝝth theyꝝ
 eꝝente & enemyes, beyng conered wꝝth water by vnto the na-
 olde ma- uell, and not muche caring, that men ſe the pꝛyꝝ par-
 ners of tes of theyꝝ naked bodies. Neyther dꝝd they knowe
 Englyſh the uſe of appaꝛaile, but accuſtomed to compaſſe their
 men. belyes and neckes onely wꝝth Iron, whych they eſte-
 med an oznamẽt, and token of richelle, as other bar-
 barous people ſuppoſed golde. They paynte theyꝝ bo-
 dies, wꝝth dyuerſe pꝛctures, and fourmes of beaſtes,
 and therefore weare no garmente, leaſt the paynting
 ſhoulde be hydden, beyng a nation verie valiaunte,
 and warlyke, gredye of ſlaughtyr, and contente onely
 wꝝth a ſmall target, a ſpeare, and a ſhepne hangynge
 by theyꝝ naked ſydes, ignoraunte vtterlye of the uſe of
 ſhyꝛtes of mayle, and helmettesfoꝝ: they reckened the
 ſame cumberous vnto them, whẽ they ſhoulde ſwim o-
 uer the lakes, thꝛoughe whoſe vapours and heate, the
 ayꝛe is there alwayes myſtꝛe and darke. Seuerus o-
 mytted nothyng vndone, that myght auayle the Ro-
 maine Souldiours, and endomage the Byſtons. And
 when all thynges were pꝛepared, as hym ſelfe wꝝl-
 lhed, he leſte hys yonger Sonne named Ceta, in a
 parte of the Ile, whyche was ſubiecte vnto the Ro-
 maines, to ſe to the iudgementes of matters in law, &
 thadmyꝛſtracꝝon of Cyuile affayꝛes: vnto whom he
 appoynted as Counſellours, certayne of hys frendes,
 beyng graue Perſonages. And hym ſelfe toke An-
 tonyne in hys companye agaynſte the Byſtons. Af-
 ter the Romayne armye was paſſed the Ryꝛers, and
 Bulwarke (whyche beyng buylded ouer aꝛeanſt the
 Byſtons, at that tyme eanded the boundes of the Ro-
 mayne Emppꝛe) there were foughten manye lyghte
 ſkymꝛſſhes, wherof at al tymes the Romaines were
 vꝛctours. But the flyghte from them was eaſye vnto
 the Barbarous: foꝝ they hidd them ſelues in woodes,
 lakes, and other ſecrete cozners, wherwith they were
 thꝛoughlye acquaynted. All the whyche beyng
 contrarye vnto the Romaynes, cauſed muche de-
 lay in the warre. In the meane ſeaſon, a greuous di-
 ſeaſe came vpon Seuerus, beyng ſoꝛe appaled wꝝth
 age,

Ceta.

The ſick-
 neſſe of
 Seuerus.

The thyrde booke.

Fo. xlv.

age, ſo that he was conſtrained to kepe his Chambrẽ,
 and ſende Antonine vnto the warres, there to execute
 themperours offyce. But Antonine, not regardynge
 any buſyneſſe of the Byſtons, endeoured by all the
 meanes he coulde, to winne, and conſpyꝛme the heartes
 of the Souldiours vnto hym, deꝛaunꝛe often ty-
 mes his bzother, to thentente they ſhoulde onely obey,
 and ayde hym, to the attaynyng of the Soueraigny-
 ty. The longe maladye of hys father, and the ſlowe
 pꝛocraſſynacꝝon of hys death, cauſed the yonge man
 to be verie penſyfe, and doubtfull, ſo that he laboured
 to perſwade hys fathers Phyſycions, and myꝛiſters The deſth
 to rydde in anye caſe, wꝝth all celeritye poſſyble, the of Seue-
 olde man oute of the world: vntyll that Seuerus, be-
 yng rather thꝛoughe thoughte, then ſyckenes, conſu-
 med, eanded hys lyfe: who was the moſte famouſe of
 all Emperours in warlyke affayꝛes. Foꝝ none other
 had obtayned ſo manye vꝛctories, and Conqueſtes, Hys bz-
 eyther Cyꝛyle agaynſte hys aduerſaries, oꝝ foꝛreyne toꝛyes.
 agaynſt the Barbarous nacꝝons. Thus deceaſed he,
 after he had gouerned themppꝛe the ſpace of. xlii. ye-
 res, leauynge hys Sonnes foꝝ hys ſuccellours in the regned
 ſame: vnto whome he leſte alſo ſo greate aboundaunce
 of riches, as none of his pꝛedeceſſours had befoꝛe him
 done, and a greater armye, then anye foꝛreyne power
 was able to reſyſte. When Anthonyne had ones got-
 ten the Supꝛeame aucthoꝛitye, he began to deſtroye
 euery man from the verie bedde ſyde, as the pꝛouerbe
 ſayth. Foꝝ he put to deſth the Phyſicians, becauſe they
 obeyed not hys commaundemente, in haſtynge hys fa-
 thers deathe. And ſlewẽ all hys owne, and bzothers
 Pourꝛyes and enſtructers, foꝝ that they wente about
 to reconcyle them, leauynge thꝛoughe hys crueltie,
 none a lyue, that was eyther in dyꝛgnity, oꝝ had reue-
 renced hys father. The Chꝛyuetaynes of charmye, he
 entꝛyed, to perſwade the Souldiours, to pꝛoclayme
 hym onely Emperoure: ymagynynge daylye manye
 folde myſcheyſes agaynſte hys bzother. But he coulde
 not wꝛn the Souldiours good wylls, oꝝ aſſent ther-
 unto. Foꝝ they remembꝛed that Seuerus bzought ey-
 ther

¶.iii.

The historie of Herodian

ther of them bp from theyr infancie, wyth equall diligence, & them selues had euer shewed lyke honour & obedience to them both. Wherefore Antonine, perceiuinge that he coulde not speade of hys purpose wyth tharmy, haupnge taken truce wyth the Byttons, graunted them peace, and receiued theyr hostages, he remoued wyth great speede towarde hys Moother & Brother. Whe the two Brethren met together, theyr Moother laboured to bypnyng them to agreement, wherein also, many of the moste prudente, and sage of Seuerus frendes, and Counsaillors, earnestly trauailed. Antonyne thereby (sepyng all men reppned hys sensualitytie) was enduced, rather of force, then good wyll, to counterfaiete loue. After whych done, the two Brethren, gouernynge thempyre wyth equall honour, and Soueraignitie, launched oute of Bytayne, and sayled wyth the Reliques of theyr father, towarde Rome. For when they had burned the bodye, they carried the ashes, intermedled wyth certayne pleasaunt odours, in a bore of Alabastrre to Rome, that it myghte be there enteaured, & enclosed amonges the sacred monuments of other Byynces. Them selues ledde thus theyr armye, as Conqueroures of Bytayne, and passed ouer Thoecean, vnto the next coaste of Fraunce.

After what sorte therefore,
Seuerus deceased, and
howe hys Sonnes
tooke vppon
theym

thempyre, it is in this
presente booke at
lengthe declared.

(r)

¶ The ende of the
thyrde booke
of Herodian.

¶ The

The Argumente of the
fourthe Booke of He-
rodian.



De fourthe Booke, speaketh of
the pompe, that was at the Co-
ronization of Severus. The
disorde, and debate, of the two
brotherne, and the death
of Geta slaine by his own bro-
ther Anthonyne, who remay-
ned after sole Emperour, and
was very cruel and vncōstānt.
After that, of the Treas, done
by hym to the Alerandriens, and the cause therof. Of
an other Treason done vnto Artabanus the King
of Parthia. And howe Anthonyne hym selfe
was slayne by Martialis one of hys Garde,
and howe Macrinus was made Em-
perour, who sustayned, and helde
on the warre with Artabanus,
and synallye made peace
and concozde with
hym.

(:)
(:)
(:)
(:)
(:)
(:)

The fourthe booke of
Thistorie of Hero-
dian. Fo. xvi.



De Actes of Severus by hys spate
of. This peres, are in the former
booke sufficiently shewed. After
whose death, the yonge Empe-
rours his Sonnes, to their woe
ther, retourned hastily towarde
Rome: byng in their iorney con-
tinuall rancor and debate. For
thei neuer lodged in one place,
nor bled one table: suspecting daily, all they mete, and
drynke, lesse eyther of them pvenienting other, should
souerely in their seruices, make hys seate wyth pay-
son. And for that cause, thei made the speedier remo-
uinges: thinking to liue moze safely within the Citie,
where thei purposed, to deuyde the imperial palaise be-
twene them, or elles (as thei bothe chiesly wyshed) to
lye a sunder, in other the largest, & beautifulllest hou-
ses of the Citie. When thei were entered into Rome,
all the people crowned wyth Lawrell, receyued, and
the Senate welcommed them. For mozte rode them-
perours themselves, clothed in Imperiall purple. And
aferre them folowed the Consulles, bringe the bestell
wyth Severus reliques. Which bestell, the people, af-
ter they hadde saluted the newe Emperours, byd re-
uerentlye worshyp. The Emperours & Consulles be-
yng thus accompanied wyth pynctely pompe, carped
the same into the Temple, where the diuynue monu-
mentes, of Marcus, and other Emperours, are seen.
After they had synysshed the solempne sacrifice, and,
according to the auacient blage, celebrated the fune-
rall Cerimonies, bothe the brotherne departed into
the imperial palaise: which thei deuised betwene the,
closed by all backe doores, and pyncey posternes, and
mette togither onely at the viter gates. They chose be-
sydes, eyther vnto hym selfe a sundrye Garde, and ne-
uer came togithers, vnles it were some tyme for a ly-
tle whyle to be seen of the people. Neuerthelesse, first

of all, thei accomplishe the due funerals, of their Father. For the Romaines accustome, to consecrate with Immortalitiee, suche Emperours, as at their death, leue pyther Child, or Successour, in their pyre bebinde them. And those whiche are endowd with that honour, thei Canonize amonges the Goddes. There is throughtout the Citie, a certayne dolefull lamentation, mixed with feastfull ioye. And thei vse to entere the dead Corple, very sumptuously, after the comon ioye of men. But then, thei haue an Image, made as lyke the deade Emperour, as maye be. The same, within the porche, of the Imperiall palayce, thei laye in a great, & highe bedde of Quorie, covered ouer with cloth of golde. And truely, the same Image, loketh very pale, lyke vnto a diseased pacient. About the bedde on eyther syde, a great parte of the daye, do certayne persons sit. That is to werte, on the left syde, the Senate, clothed in blacke garmentes: And on the ryght syde, many Matrones, whome either their husbands, or parentes dignities, do betwisyf. None of these, are seene to weare any owches, or chaples of golde. But beynge cladde, in thynne white vesture, thei shewe the countenaunce of mourners. And thus doe thei continue the space of .vii. dayes: during the which, every daye, the Emperours Philicians, oode repaire vnto the Bedde. And, as though thei hadde felte the patients pulces, declare that he wareth moze sicke then before. Finally, when it seemeth that he is deceased, Certayne of the moste noble, and worthy yonge men, of thorders of knightes, & Senatours, doo take vp the bedde, on their shoulders, and cary it throughte the strete called Sacra via, vnto tholde market place, where the Romaine magistrates, are accustomed to reder by their offices. Ther, on both sides, are certayne stages made with steppes, vpo the which, on thone side, is a quere of boyes, beynge noble mens Sonnes, and on thother syde, are many bewtyfull women, singing Hymnes, and balades, in prayse of the dead Emperour, measured with diuerles lamettable verses. When those are synnyshed, the yonge men do take vp the bedde againe, and bere it out of the citie, into the fiede called Cam

pus Martius. In the broadest parte, wherof, there is erected a towre soure square, w sides of equal heighe, builded of great timber, lyke vnto a Tabernacle. The same within furth, is filled with dyce chippers, & Rodes: And on the vtter syde, haged with Arras clothes of golde, and decked with pynages of Iudle, and sundry painted pictures. Within it also, is an other lesse Towre, but lyke in forme, with doores and portalles opened. And ouer y the .iii. & fourthe, w manye other roomes, ascending continually, vntil thei reche vnto the highest, which is lesse then all the other. A man may compare this building, vnto Towyres, whiche are set in banes, with fyre on the Toppes, to directe shippes, which sayle by nyght on the seas, into their perfecte portes, and sure stations. The same are commonly called Phari. Now when thei haue put the bedde in the Seconde Tabernacle, they gather togethers all kyndes of spicerie, and perfumes, w diuerle odoriferous frutes, herbes, & myxes, the which thei thowse on heapes, in the Tabernacle. Neither is ther, any nation, Citty, or person, whiche excelleth in honour, or dignitie, but at y time, wil to the vtermost, of hys power, honorably celebrate, the lasse funerals, of the perour. When thei haue conched a great heape of spices togethers, & stuffed y building therewith, all the Romaine knightes, do ride about y Towre, in a iuste course, & order to & fro, called of the Pirrhichius. The riottes are also drawe about, wherin many do sit, clothed in purple, representing y persons, of all noble men, being Magistrates, & Capitaines, of Rome. The Ceremonies being throughtly ended, the Successour in thempire, taketh a brade of fire in his hand, & fireth therin the Tabernacle. After wha, all other y are pzefer, doo thowse fire likewise, into the same. And immediately al y building, being filled w those dyce chippers, & spices, begineth to burne vehemently. Then out of y highest, & lest Towre, as out of a hyge steaple, is let fourth an Eggle, the whiche they beleue, dothe beare th Emperours soule, into heauen. And from thence fourth is that Emperour worshypped as the other Goddes.

The dyf. When these two yonge menne, had after thys sorte, cozde of y consecrated they parent, they returned home: where two bre: they dayly exerceysed pryue grudges, lyng in a wayte thzen. one for an other, and ymagynynge al y meanes, wher by they myght entrappe eyther other. Finally, they omptted nothyng, wherewith eyther of them might destroy, and defeate other, and aspyre to thole Monarchye by hym selfe. Besydes that, the myndes of all the noble men, and Cytezens, whych had anye honourable offyce, or dygnytie, were seuered into dyuerse faccyons (either of the brethren, sending they secreete letters, to allure wth sundrye promyses, manye vnto they pryuate appetytes. The greater parte leane

Ceta bet ter belo ued of y people.

Anto nine outrage oule and cruell.

But Antonyne in contrary wyse, behaued hym selfe in all thynges moze cruelllye. For being alienat, from the maners I before rehearsed, he affected, to seme an embracer of warlike lyfe, and company. And throug orderpnyng all matters iresully, he purchased vnto hym selfe frendshyp, rather throug menacyng, and feare, then geile perswasions, or good wyl. Now after their Mother had a long time in bairn, endeouored to reduce the par the into brotherly conoord, and bnitie, it semed best, to tyng of decide theyre betwene the. Wherfore, hanyng called thempire togither they fathers frendes, they agreed of y same betwene dyuision. So that all Europe fel vnto Antonines lot, the twoo & the lande ouer aneanste it, called Asya, was appoin brethren ted vnto Ceta. Therbi, either of the, as it wer, throug Propon: a certayne diuine prouidence, should be seperated to the tis. Sea of Propontis. And it was concluded, y Antony nes army should remaine in Bizantiu, and Cetas, in Chalcedon & Citie of Bithinia. The which Citie, being situate one against y other, should defend either of they

they limittes, & prohibyte the bothe, from inuasions. As many Senators as were of Europe, shold remain in Rome, & al the rest attend vpon Ceta: who appoin ted for the Seates royall of his dominion, Antioche, & Antioch Alexandrie, bothe Citie of greatnes, not muche infe. Alexan ryo: to Rome. Then of the inhabitants of y South, dyte. leuynge the Mauritanians, & Numidians, vnto Anto. Maurita nine, him selfe toke al y residue, euen vnto the Dyen nians. tal colles. Whiles they debated these matters, al other Numidi beholdpnyng the earthe wth sorrowfull countenance, and. they mother Julia, spake as ensueth.

We haue found out my sonnes, & the how to decide Julia the the land, & Sea betwyt you and eyther of your bou. ii. Empe des, ye say, the Pontian sea doth seperate. But now, roze mo. how wil ye decide your Mother, or how shal I wote ther. unate creature be departed betwene you. I praye thea Herwoz me, and either of you, bury the part, he shal haue, y I des vnto my selfe may also, to the Sea, & land, be diuenered be them. riue you. When she had so sayd, she layd her armes vpon their neckes, & embracyng them bothe, endeou red in al y she could, to reconcile the. Wherfore, being moued to compassion, they lycenced every man to de parte, wthout any finall, or determinate conclusyō, and them selues also, returned home. But their rācoz, and enuy, encreased daily, for whe any Capitaines, or Magistrates, were elected, either of the brethren, ai ded his own frende chiefly. And when they late in iud gement, they helde euer dyuerse opinyons, to the in tollerable damage, & losse, of the party, who had y mat ter in controuersye. They omptted besides no kynde of secreete wyles, and entrappnynges, labourynge to entyle eyther others Cookes, Butlars, and Copbea vers, to popson they Myster. The whiche endeou rs, when they pceeded not, as either would, for that they tooke they meate wth greate warche, and dyli gence, Anthonyne beyng impacyente of delaye, and pycked wch ambycyon of the hole Emppye, deter myned eyther to comytte, or suffer, some notable facyno: ous facte. And therefore, he compassed the matter, wth strengthe, and murder. For sepyng that

The Historie of Herodian.

Ceta
slayns by
hys Bro.
ther An-
tonyne.

hys priup attempts toke none effecte, he thoughte it
necellarye, settinge all hope, and leaue aparts, to trye
hys begon enterpryse oute of hande. Wherfore,
sodeynlye breakynge open hys Wrothers Chawmber
dore, he moste cruelly there slew hym, vpon hys wro-
thers lay, wher he thought not of anye such mischief.
The which dede, beinge accomplished, he immediatly
lepte furthe, and runnyng through all the palayce,
cryed, that he hadde wth greate dyfficultye, escaped
a maruaylouse daunger. And therewith, he comma-
nded the Souldyours of hys Garde, to safecoynge
hym furthwith into the Campe, where he myghte a-
byde in more suretye: sayinge that he shoulde perishe
yf he remayned anye longer in the Courte. And they
credytyng hys wordes, and beinge ignorant of that
was happened wthin, accompanied hym, as he ran
runnyng also. Thys moued a greate tumulte, amon-
ges the people, whyles the Prynce wente priuyllye in
the nyghte, through the myddes of the Citie. Allsoone
as he came into the Campe, he entered into a lytell
Chappell, wherein, the Signes, and Images of the
hoof, were worshypped: and there fallinge prostrate,
gaue thanks wth bowes, as yf they had bene for
hys healthe. When the same was reported to the
Souldyours, whereof some were washyngs, and
some other reposyng theym selues, they ran thither
as men amased, in dyuerse plumpes. And he, com-
myng furthe into the myddes of theym, dyd not at
the fyrste, open the matter throughe, as it was com-
mytted, but cryed that he had escaped a maruaylouse
daunger, and Treason, of a malycious manne, hys
enemye, for so he named hys brother. And that wth
much dyfficultye, after longe stryfe, hys aduersaries
were vanquysshed. For whyles they both contended,
fynallye, he was by the fauoure of fortune, leste onely
Emperour. But in this darke & ouerthwart inueigh-
nyng of these wordes, he wysshed, rather to haue hys
dede vnderstanded, then openlye harde. Then for hys
safetie obtayned, he promysed vnto euerye Souldy-
oure, twog thousande, fyue hundred grotes, and he
alowed

The fourth booke.

Fo. xlix.

alowed them halfe as muche more byttayle, as they
were accustomed to haue before that tyme. He ly-
cenced them also, to take theym selues, money oute
of the Temples, and Treasuries, laynginge out
at large, in one daye, as muche as Seneca had in
roli. yeres, gathered, and of other mennes calamityes
and myseryes, heaped togythers. The Souldy-
ours, beyng wth so greate aboundaunce of mo-
ney entyled, perceyvinge thole cpyrsumstaunce of the
aforesayde murdre, by thole that were fledde from
the Courte, pronounced hym sole Emperoure, and
declared Ceta a Traytour. Antonyne remayned the
same nyghte in the Temple, and assayinge hym selfe,
in the rewardes, wherewith he had wonne the Soul-
dyours heartes, wente the nexte daye into the Se-
nate house, beyng enuyroned wth all the armye,
and moze armure and weapons, then were accus-
tomed to garde the Prynce, beyng entered into the
Senate, he made hys sacryfice, and that ended, he
ascended thimperyall Throne, and made an Oracy-
on, as foloweth.

I am not ignorant that every murdre of a man, The orat-
nes owne kyndred, as soone as it entred into the eyon of
eares of others, wylle seame obvous, and the name Anto-
it self, when it is heard, wylle adde a maruaylous slaue.
der. For compassiue foloweth the vnfortunate, and en-
up pursueth the mighty. The vanquysshed is thought
to receyue iniurye, and the Conqueroure is suppoled
to commyt wronge. But if any man wylle ponder the
matter it selfe, rather wth attentife Counsell, then
any percyual fauoure towarde hym that is dead, and
exactlye consyder hys cause and entente, he shal easilye
fynd that it is both iust and requysite, to reuenge, ra-
ther then to receiue iniurye. For the infamye of ty-
morousenes, doth ensue the calamitye of the murdered,
but the ouercommer, besydes that he is in safetie,
dothe also beare awaye the renowne of fortitude.
Now al other thynges the which he entended against
me, wth poysons, and al other kinde of Treason, it
lyeth in poure handes, to wrelle oute by tormentes.
D. iiii. Therefore

Romul^o.The ex-
treme
Crueltie
of Anto-
nine.

Therefore perope, haue I commaunded all hye ser-
uautes to be here presente, that you may understoode
the truerth. There be many of them already racked,
whose confession ye maye throughe heart. Finally,
whyles I was wyth mye moother, he came vpon me,
brynging in his company, many armed to weapen. But
I knowig the matter before, feared my self on mine
enemy. For he neither bare any minde, nor yet purpo-
sed anye thyng, pertayninge to a brother. And to de-
stroy him, the which doth first entere mischief, eue as
it is rightfull, so is it also receaied in vs. For Romu-
lus hym selfe, the buylder of this Citie, forbore not
his Brother, which deluded his workes of so greate
importaunce. I omitt Germanicus the brother of
Nero, and Tytus the brother of Domitian. Marcus
the Philosopher, did not suffre y checks of his Son
in lawe. But I, in chauncing of payson prepared a
gainste me, and the swoorde that henge ouer mye shoul-
ders, haue slayne myne enemy: for that name, hathe
he, throughe his deades deserued. Render you thakes
vnto the Goddes, for that they haue preserved one
Prince vnto you. And let not your myndes, be scut-
tered into sondry opinions, but obeyenge youre onely
Emperour, lede your lyues hereafter in tranquillite.
For Jupiter, eue as he possesseth, the onely Emptre,
and dominion, amonges the Goddes, so hathe he ap-
pointed, the same vnto one alone, amonges mortall
men. After he had spoken these woordes, wyth loude
voyce, full of pre, and cruell countenaunce, beholding
the frendes of Geta, whiche trembled, and wared
pale throughe feare, he retourned into the palatce.
Furthewith then, were the alpes, and frendes, of Ge-
ta, put to death, euen those, which dwelt in the house,
wyth hym, and all his seruautes, so that the age of
infantes, was not spared. Besydes that, the deade
harkalles, were layde in Cartes, for a reproche, car-
ied oute of the Citie, & there throwen on heapes, and
burned. Neyther suffered he to remayne alpye, anye
one, which was but of lytle acquayntaunce with Ge-
ta. The wreslars, Carters, and Stage players, and
synallye

synallye all kynde of thyng, that was eyther grate-
full, or acceptable, to the eyes, or eares of Geta, were
euerye where destroyed. And euerye Senatour, that
excelled in nobilitie, dignitie, or riches, was putte to
death, as his frendes vpon euerye false trile: yea som-
tyme, without any cause, vpon euery lyght accusatio.
He caused to be slayne also, the sister of Commodus,
beinge verye aged, and thitherunto of all Empe-
rous: entertayned with great reuerence, as it became
the daughter of Marcus: takynge for occasion, that
she had bewayled vnto his moother, the death of Ge-
ta. And with her his owne wife the daughter of Plan-
tianus, whiche before was sente into Sicilia, and a
kynsman of his owne named, Seuerus, the sonne of
Pertynar, and Lucilla the sister of Commodus.
Finally, he roted out, as it were from the botom, eu-
erye one, whiche remained of Imperial bloude, or in
the Senate, of the nobilitie. He commaunded also, all
the rulers, and officers, of the prouinces, to be slain,
as the frendes of Geta: so that all the nyghtes, were
spen in murderynge, a meruaylous numbre of men.
Yea, he buried quicke in the pearthe, the Vestall vir-
gines, as though they had violated theyr virginite. All vir-
gines. Finally, that whiche neuer before was done, he com-
mitted. For whyles he was lokynge vpon the playes
called Circenses, the people of Rome, rejoyunge, I
knowe not howe, a certayne Carter, whome he at-
tentlye behelde, he takynge it for an obloquie towar-
des hymselfe, furth wyth commaunded the whole ar-
mie, to runne vpon the people, and to spoyle, and slea
euerye one, that had spoken agaynst the Carter. And
the souldyours, hauing once gotten licence of ridynge,
and ragbyng, when they whiche had spoken agaynst
the Carter, coude not be discerned amonges the peo-
ple, (for no man woulde in that multitude, confesse
the truerth) as they happened vpon anye man, either
slewe hym, or elles, takynge them all captiues, after
they raunsome payed, dyd with great difficultie re-
lease them. When these thynges were finished,
The Emperour styred with remoyse of his enynges,
and

and detesting the liuinge in the Citie, remitted from Rome, to set the Souldiours in order, and visite the provinces. After he was passed Italye, he wente vnto the bankes of Danowe, the which are subiects to the Romayne Emperre. There, eyther he exercised his bodye in Cartinge, or huntynge all kinde of wyld beastes, or elles, late in iudgement: but that was very sealdome, giving sentence briefly, and answering verie shortly, after he had harde but lytle of the matter. He there beydes, ioyned all the Germaines into hys societie: so that of them, he elected euery mosse valyaunte, & goodly of stature, for his companions in warre, and garde of his personne. And oftentimes, layenge a syde the Romayne appaile, he put on the Germaine garments, and was sondry tymes seene in theyr Callockes, embrowded with golde. He ware besydes on his head, a velowe bushe of here, rounded after the Germaine sorte. Wherewith the barbarous people beyng ioyful, loued him exceedingly. The Romayne Souldiours also reioysed therat, because he gaue vnto them sundry bountiefull gyses. Hym selfe exercised all the offices, of a private Souldiour. For if there were any trencher to dygge, hym selfe fyrste dygged, anye bygge to be made ouer a ryuer, any bulwarke to be buylded, or anye other handye worke, or labour, to be taken in hande, hym selfe fyrste enterprysed the same: committed alwaye with thynne fare, in cuppes, and cysses of woode, eating continually coulse bredde. For he accustomed, to feade him selfe with a Cake of Rye, the whiche he grounde, and baked hypon the coles, wyth hys owne handes. Fynally, he reiected all wanton pleasures, and bled symple thinges, appertayninge vnto the pooresse common Souldiour. Besydes that, he had rather be called Companion, then Prince. And vnto the trouaile mosse commonlye on hys feete, as the Souldiours dyd, seldome ryding on horse, or in chariote, and alway bering his owne harnesse. Yea many tymes, he bare on his owne shoulders, the Ständerdes, that were heuily laden with pictures of golde, and scarcely light ynoughe, for the strongest Souldiour. For these, and other

other semblable thinges, did hys army loue hym, as a warrelke personage, and maruaile at hym, as a be-lyaut Capitaine. For it seemed a miracle vnto them, that a man of so lytle stature, was able to endure so greate labours. When he had established some Souldiours at Danowe, and passed into Thrace, which boundeth vpon the Macedonians, furthwith he became another Alexander. For he renewed the memoire of the same kynge, by all the meynes he coulde deuyse: commanding hys ymagines to be erected, in euery towne, and rederylling Rome selfe, the Capitole, and all the Temples, with the statues of Alexander. He then sawe many ymagines foolishly wroughte, that bare in one body two faces, of Alexander, and Antonyne: who wente abroade, in the Macedonien apparayle, wearing a diademe on his head, and slippers on his feete. He named a chosen company of yonge men, the Macedonien Phalanx: commanding his Capitaines, to take vnto them, the names of Alexander's Chieftaines. And the yonge me, which he had sent for out of Sparta, he called by Laconike, & Pitanyte Ceturie. When he had ended these thinges, & ordered euery Cytie, as he might, he made a betage vnto Bergame, a Citie of Asia. & he might vse some of Asculapius Whysicke. And when he was ther arriued, after he had recreated hi self w suffier sleape, he removed to Troie, visited all the olde monuments of the Citie, & wente vnto Achilles Coumbe. And hauyng sumptuously decked the same, w flowres, & Garlandes, he began of newe to counterfayte Achilles. But as he wished, for some one lyke vnto Patroclus, his dearest fherter named Festus, whiles he sojourned at Troie, deceased: dispatched, as some thought, w poise, & he might be buried as Patroclus was: but as other affirme, extinct w sickness. His body, did Antonine comaunde to be brought fourthe, & place wher it shuld be buried, to be piled with much woode. And putting the corpe, into a middes therof, & sacrificig diuerse kindes of beastes, he threwe fire into it, & holding a glasse in his hande, dranke of the wyne therein, makynge petition vnto the wyndes.

And beinge somewhat balde, whē he sought for heare, to laye into the fyre, it became a sporte, vnto all that were present: yet at the last, he notted of those heares he had. Chiefly amonges al valiaunt men, he praised Sylla the Romain, and Hannibal the Aphyricano, whose Image he also erected. After he was departed from Troye, he passed ouer all Asye, Bythynye, and the other adiacent countreyes. And hauinge set order in hys affaires, euerye where, he wet vnto Antyoche, where he was receyued verie honorably, and tarped a litle while. From thence he remoued to Alerandrye, clokyng this voyage, with pretence of desyre, to see the Citie, buylded by Alexander, and to consulte with the God of that countrey, whome the inhabitants do greatly worship. Faining these two causes, he commaunded first aulters, for sacrifice to be erected, with all kinde of funeral celebration, to the honour of their God, and the memoire of Alexander. When this was declared vnto the Alerandryen multitude, beinge naturally chaungeable, with euerye trifle, they altogether, as it were men distracte of theyr wyttes, reioysed at the pynces wyll, and beneuolence. And prepared them selues, to receaue hym more honorably, then euer they dyd any other Emperoure. For all kinde of muscalle instrumentes, mette him in his passage, making a wonderfull melodious sounne. Besides that, al the gates, and stretes, being replenished with the flauour of spices, and perfumes, they welcomed hym with bonetyres, & throwyng of floures in hys waye. After his entrie into the Citie, he spyte visyted the Temples, & when he had there offered many sacrifices, and heaped the aulters with frankensence, he went vnto the Tombe of Alexander, wher he put of his owne robe of purple, hys rynges adozned with precious stoness, his gyrdle, & all his other goodly ornaments, and layed the same vpon the Tombe. The Alerandryens beholding al these thynges, reioysed wonderfullye, and made fest, bothe nyght, and daye, throughout the Citie, beyng ignorant, what was bydde in the Emperours cancarde stomacke.

Sylla.
Hannibal.

Antyoche.

Alerandrye.

For

For these thynges did he, thughe subtyltye, to then sent, he might see, all the multitude together. The cause, of his priuey indignacio, and grudge, was this. It was reported vnto hym at Rome, that whyles hys father lyued, and after his death, the Alerandryens, had blutred out many opprobrious wordes against him. For in deade, they are of nature, talkatyue people, fashyned to mocke, and scoone, all others, habelyng against euery noble man, and chye fly wyth quypes, and tauntes, as them selles thinke, pleasant, & swete but those, by who they are spoken, accompte them verie odious, & bitter. For of suche scoffes, those, wherbyce is reproued, doo soonest fyre anger. Wherefore when they had spoken many thynges agaynst Antioch, not keepyng in sylene, the murder of hys Brother, commonly callynge his Mother Iocasta, & scoorning him, because that beynge of so lytle stature, he would seme to counterfeit Alexander, and Achilles, whyche were mosse valiaunte, and mighty Captaynes, they so encensed hym, beyng alreadye of hys owne nature, yrou, and bloodthirstye, that he fullye determined, their death, and destructio. When he had therefore synished this laste reherfed solemnitie, and feast, sayng so great a multitude of the next nations, resortyng vnto the Cytie, he commaunded by proclamation, that all the Alerandryen youthe, shuld assemble into a certayne spelde, without the walles: promysynge, that as he had of the Macedonys, and Spartayne yonge men, euen so wold he of them, constitute a square battell, called Phalax, in the honoure, and remembraunce, of Alexander. When they were so assembled, he commaunded them, to seperate themselves in bandes, a grea te space one from an other, that he mighte electe oute of them, the apteste ages, statures, and personages, for the warres. The yonge men createdyng the same, and perswaded wyth a coloure of trathe, thughe the grea te honoure, he had before shewed towardes theyr deade Prince, resorted thither in many cōpanyes, bringyng with them, their Parētes and Betherne, with ioynse acclamacio & shoutes.

The occasion of Antioch's hate against the Alerandryens.

Iocasta.

P. 19.

The

Then Antonine, went about eche compaign, betwix
them, and praising this and that, in euery one as he
liked, until his whole host had compassed them in wa-
res, and looking for no such thinge. And when he per-
ceaued them al to be enclosed with his armie, &entan-
gled, as it were with nettes, him self came furth with
his garde, and gaue a watche word vnto the Souldi-
ours: who furthwith ran vpon the people, and slewe
with meruaylous slaughter, the naked, and vnarmed
youth, & al other that wer present. Of the Souldiours,
some were occupied in murdering onely, other some
buried the deade corpes, in huge pyttes, & coueringe
them with earth againe rayled a meruaylous highe
hill: many were drawen half dead into y pittes, & ma-
ny were buried quicke. There perished besides very
many of the Souldiours them selves. For they, which
had any breth remaining, and not fully lost theyr na-
tural strength, clipping the Souldiours, which ranne
vpon them, drew the same also, into the pittes with
them. And there was so great a murdre committed,
that with streames of blood, which ranne alonge the
playnes, not onely the mouth of Pylus, but also the
Sea by the Cittie, became red of colour. Thys ended,
Antonine affecting the Parthiane surname, and re-
uolunt of Thoriental conquest, (although the people
were nowe in perfecte peace) inuented this crasse. He
wrote letters vnto Artabanus king of Parthia, and
sent vnto him Ambassadors, with sundrie sumptuous
giftes. In those letters he wrote, that he wold take to
wife the kinges daughter, for y him self was a prince,
and a princes sonne. And therefore it becomed not his
estate, to become son in law, of any priuate or meane
person, but rather to marry a Queene, or the dought-
er of a great and puissant king. He alledged, that the
Empires of Rome, and Parthia, being the ii. mighti-
est of the world, shoulde by this affinitie ioyne toge-
thers, and no ryuer disseuerynge them, be of so great
strength, that it were impossible, for any forreigne po-
wer, to vanquish them. For quod he) all the Bar-
barous nations, whiche are nowe subiecte, vnto both
these

The
murder
of the A-
lerandri-
ens by
treason.

Pylus.

Letters
sent vnto
Artaba-
nus.

these Empires, wylle easily continue in subiection,
when euery of them, shall haue theyr owne rulers
and gouernours. The Romaynes, he affirmed, had
an armie of fote men, the whiche with speares, and
in playne battaile, excelled all other. And the Parthi-
ans had a greafe power of horsemen, and experte ar-
chers. Wherefore, these thynges ioyned together,
and aggreinge in one, they shoulde (he sayde) easily re-
taine, vnder one Scepter, and Diademe, the Empire
of the whole worlde. The pleasaunte spyes, and syne
clothe also, whiche came from them, to the Romay-
nes, and the goodly metall, and all curious wroughte
thynges, which were transported from the Romains
to them agayne, shoulde not after thys mary age be
seldome caried, as it was wont by marchauntes, but
thuse therof, shoulde be in common to them, without
let or interruption, in one land, and vnder one gouer-
nour. After the Parthian kinge, had receaued these
letters, he first denied the request, saying, that a bar-
barous matrimony became not a Romayne. For what
cōcord (quod he) woulde be betwene them, which used
not one language, nor one kind of liuing, & appayzele.
There were (he sayde) at Rome manie Senatours
doughters, amanges whome the Emperoure might
chose hym a wyfe: as there were, in his dominion, Arfacide.
Neither was there anye cause, he thoughte, why anye of them, shoulde
be alienated from theyr native countrey. With thys
answer, he repulsd the Emperours suite.
But Antonine, neuer leste of sendyng manie gyf-
tes, and promysynge by othes, his perfecte loue to-
wardes his daughter, vntyll the Barbarous prince
beleuyng his wordes, promysed to geue hym his
daughter to wyfe. When the same of thys was
spredde, all the Barbarous people prepared them-
selues to receaue the Romayne Emperoure, reioy-
synge with a certayne hope, of continuall peace
thereafter.

P. liii.

Then

The Parthians overthrew by discipline.

Then Antonine, (having passed without let, or stay, of any man, the Rivers,) entered into the Parthian Region, and rode thynge the same, as hys owne. And in hys waye, all the people, celebrated sacrifices burning encense, by the decked Altares, wherewith he sayned hym selfe, to be greatly pleased. After a lōge iorney, he approached at the lasse, nyghe the Palace of Artabanus: Who met wth him, in a certaine plaine befoze the Cytie, to receaue hym, as a newe Byrd, grome, and hys Sonne in lawe. And a greate multitude of the Barbarouse people, crowned wth theyr countrey floures, and apparayled in garmentes, adorned wth golde, and varyable colours, celebrated the same, as a feaste, and solempnytye, daunsynge together, by the sounde of Pypes, and Tabors. For in those instrumentes, they are aboue measure delyted, especially, when they are ones wel typled with wine. But when all the multitude, were assembled together, and hauing lefte their hozles behinde, and laide asyde their bowes, and arrowes, applyed them selves to banquetynge, and gatheringe together in a rude plump, rode without order, whyles they suspected no harme, but every mā, thursting for wardes, to see the newe maryed man, Sodeynly, Antonine wth a preynt sygne, commaunded all hys men, to slea, and destroy the Barbarouse people. They, beyng assyned with that sodeyne chaunce, turned theyr backs, and fledde from the Romaynes whych pursued, and slew them. Artabanus hym selfe, beyng socoured, and set vpon a hozle, by some of hys Garde, dyd wth greate difficulte escape. But the residue of the Parthians were every where overthowen, and murdered. For they neither had their hozles, which they most bled (they hadde perdie sente them befoze to graffe) neyther coude they flee: for theyr wyde garmentes, hangynge downe to theyr heales, interrupted theyr runnyng. They broughte not besides theyr bowes, and arrowes, with them, for what needed that at a weddyng? Thus, after a great murder, done on the Parthians, and a greate bootye of men, and beastes,

taken

taken captynes, and ledde awaye, Antonine departed. And withoute any respyce, burned the Townes, and byllages, geauing lycence vnto his Souldiours, to ransake, and spoyle, all that they woulde, or coude. This mischief, & calamitie, did the Parthians, bywares, receiue. Then Anthonyne, hauing byseted the inwarde partes of Parthia, and his Souldiours beyng weryed, w ravyne, and murder, retourned into Mesapotamye. From thence, he signified vnto the Senate, & people of Rome, that he had subdued Thosyrie, and brought in subiection, all the men of those Regiōs. The Senate, (albeit they befoze knewe perfectly the hole circumstance, (for Princes affayres, can by no meanes, contynue longe, in hugger mugger) yet throughe feare, and flaterie, decreed all honours of victorie, vnto hym. After this, Antonine sojourned in Mesapotamie, gyuing hym selfe, to Carving, and hunting of wyld beasts. There were two generall Capitaines of his armie, Audentius, & Macrinus, of the whiche the one was aged, rude, & bluntysh, but yet, experie in warfare. And the other, alwaye exercepled, in matters of the lawe, and therein expertly learned. This man, the Prince bled to taunte, & checke openly, as a man nothyng valiaunte, or apt to warre. For hearing that he fedde very delycately, and reiected those symple, and warlycke meates, whych Antonine bled, and that he ware a gowne, and other decente apparayle, lyke vnto a Cytizen, he reproued hym, as a womanly person, threathynge ostentynes to kyll hym. Macrynus beyng therof impacient, was stirred with meruaylouse anger. Thereunto happened this chaunce: it was perdie expediet, that Antonine, should ones synnysse hys lyfe. For beyng of hys owne nature, ouer curiouse, he studied, not onely, to knowe the priuey affayres of men, but also, to serche oute, the secretes, of the Goddes, and Wyuels. And throughe continual feare of Treason, consulted with many oracles, and retayned aboute him, diuerse Magiciens, Astrologiens, and Soothsayers, omptting no creature, whiche professed those fantasies, and pusi-

Mesapotamye.

Audentius, Macrinus.

Maternianus.

The Let
ters of
Maternianus to
Antonine.

ons. But suspecting them also, as lyers, and Pro-
phetes of flattery, he accustomed to wyte, vnto one
Maternianus in the Citie: vnto whome he had com-
mitted, the charge of all hys affayres, and hym amo-
ges all his Frindes, he had chosen, for the trustiest,
& pertaker, of all his secrete counsellors: willing him,
to sende for the beste Magiciens, from all partes, and
cōsulte with them, of the ende of his lyfe, and whether
any man, wente aboute by treason, to obtayne them-
pyre. Maternianus, (hauing accōplyshed, his Prin-
ces commaundemente) whether the Magiciens tolde
hym so, or elles because he hated Macrinus, wrote a-
gayne vnto Antonyne, that Macrinus conspyred
Treason against him, and that it was expedyente, to
rydde hym oute of the waye. And theise letters sealed
with other, as the vsage was, he deliuered to Pursu-
nautes, who were ignozant, of that they hadde in
hande. The same, (haupnge ended their iorney, with
accustomed celeritie) came vnto Antonyne, when he
prepared hym selfe, to Carteng, and was already ascē-
ded his Chariot. Then deliuered thei vnto him thole
Packquet of Lettres, amonges the which were thei
also, that touched Macrinus. But Antonyne, beyng
at that tyme fully bent to Carting, commaunded Ma-
crinus, that he should open, and peruse the Lettres,
and, yf there were any matter of importanunce, in the
contained, make relacion therof, vnto hym agayn. Yf
not, he should execute, his owne office of Pretorship.
For so at other tymes, he was accustomed, to com-
maunde hym in semblable causes. Hym selfe then de-
parted, towardes hys pastyme. And Macrinus, ha-
uing vnsealed, & seuerally perused, the Lettres, hap-
pened on the same, that mocioned his destruction.
Then vnderstanding the greates mischief, that henge
ouer hys heade, & knowing also Antonynes wrathe,
and outragouse cruelty, specially, when he shoulde
haue suche occasion, he kepte backe, the same Lettre,
and of the reste, declared the contentes, vnto Them-
perour. But yet, fearing lesse Maternianus, woulde
etelones certesye the Emperour, of the same matter,
he determined, to conuynct somme acte fourthwyth,

rather than in delayeng tyme, him self should perishe.
And therefore, thus cōcluded. Ther was a certain Ce-
turiō named Martialis, one of Antonines priuey chā-
ber, accustomed alwaies, to be next attendaunt, on his
person: whose brother, Antonine had put to death,
vpō simple accusaciō, wout lesul iudgement, & vled of
tentymes, to checke Martialis himself, callinge hym
colwarde, & cōfederate of Macrinus. This mā was sozow-
ful for y death of his brother, Macrinus thzoughly percel-
uing, & knowing also, how he was sufficiently spyrred
to malice by his own reproches, called y same, as one
already bounde, by his manifolde benefites, vnto him.
And perswaded him, y as sone, as he could finde opor-
tunitie, he should flea Antonine. Martialis, beinge w
his promises allured, & thzoughe his owne grudge, to
the reuenge of hys brothers death, already enflamed,
promised to accomplissh his minde, whē time cōueniēt
should serue. And truly, it chaunced shortly after.
For Antonine, soiozning at Carre a Citie of Melopo. Carre
tamie, visited y Temple of Diana: y which, being nigh Melapo-
vnto the Citie, is there of the inhabitants, hadde in camp.
great honour, and reuerente. Thither he went, with
a few horsmen, leuing the armie behinde him: for af-
ter he had finyshe his sacrificye, he purposed, to re-
turne vnto y Citie again. And in the midde waye, be-
inge accōpanied w one seruaunt, & hauing cōmaunded
the reste, to stave aside, he wēt, to do the requisites of
nature. Then Martialis, (which awaited euery con-
ueniēt howre) seying the Emperour alone, & all other
farre of, made haste towardes him, as though he were
called for some businesse, & running vpon him vnwa-
res, as he was vntrussing his pointes, stabbed him in
w a dagger, which he of purpose, secretly bare in hys
seaeue. And y same sliding in betwene y short ribbes,
gaue vnto Antonine, being vnarmed, a mortal, & dea-
dely wounde, whereof he furthw died. That done, Mar-
tialis lept vpō his horse, & beag to flee. But y Germa-
nic horsmen, (whō Antonine entierly loued, & had ap-
pointed for the garde of his person) being then nearer
y place, then y reste, & seinge y same murder, pursued
Martialis w maine gallop, & flew him w their darters.

Antonyne mur-
dered by
Martialis.

Martialis

When the residue of the hoste heard therof, thei ranne
togethers furthwyth to the Emperours dead corpes:
bpon the whiche Macrinus sytste of all fell, and say-
ned, to lament it excedynglye. Thys chaunce, was
dolorouse vnto the Souldiours, who accompted them
selues berefte, not onelye of theyr Soueraigne, but
also of theyr Companion in armes. Neyther dyd they
suspecte Macrinus, for they supposed, that Partia-
lis had committed the murder, for the reuenge of hys
owne priuate iniuries. Wherefore, euery man depar-
ted to hys owne cabban. And Macrinus, haupnge
burned the body of Antonyne, sent the ashes vnto his
mother, to burie. She then soiozned at Anti-
oche, where anone after, (were it of her owne
minde, or by anye mans compulsion) for the calami-
ties of her chyldren, she slewe her selfe. Thys eande of
theyr lyues, had Antonyne, & his mother Julia, after
they had lyued, as we before reherfed, and he raigned
syre yeres alone, withoute hys father, and brother.
Antonyne being thus slayne, the Souldiours, dncer-
tayne what they myght doo, abode two dayes, with-
out a pryncce, consultyng, whome they myght sytste
electe for Emperoure. For they hearde, that Artaba-
nus was commyng agaynst them, with a great and
myghtye armie, to reuenge the deathe of hys subiec-
tes, whiche were slayne in the tyme of peace. Where-
fore, they chole sytste for Emperoure, Audentius, a
man experie in warfare, and a polypke Captayne.
But he excusynge him selfe, throug hys age, refused
thempire. Then with one consent, thei elected Macri-
nus, throug the persuations of the Tribunes (who,
as the suspition after rose, were consentynge to the
murder of Antonyne, and pertakers of Macrinus co-
spiracie) as I shall at large hereafter declare. Then
Macrinus receaued Thempire, not for any cōfidece,
he had in the Souldiours, but constrained therunto,
throug necessitie, and the present state of theyr affai-
res. Whyles theise thynges were in doyng, tydynges
came vnto them, that Artabanus was euen at hand,
wyth a wonderfull puyssaunce of men, amonges
the

Antoni-
es mo-
ther
flew her
selfe.

Antony-
ne raig-
ned alone
si. yeres.

Macri-
nus toke
the rule
of thim-
pire vpo
hym.

the whiche, he hadde broughte a greate numbze of
horsemen, Archers, & men at armes, vpo Camelles,
whiche bled to syghte, wyth longe speres. Macrinus
hearinge therof, called all the armie togethers, and
made this oracion vnto them.

It is not to be meruailed, that you are dolorouse, *The ora-
cion of Ma-
crinus.*
for the deathe, of suche a pryncce, or (as I maye more
truly saye) suche a companion. But it is the property
of wyse men, to sustayne moderatly, all mortall cala-
mityes. The memozye of him, shall cōtinually be fir-
ed in your hartes, and by you, leste vnto you posteri-
tee, wyth an eternall commendacion, of the valiaunt
actes, by hym atchyued. Welydes that, of hys loue to-
wardes you, and hys partakinge of youre paynefull
trauayles, whyles he lyued. But nowe, the tyme, and
case requyrez, that (after hys funeralles with due ho-
noure parfourned) we prepare our selues, to resyste
the daunger imminent. We see the Barbarouse king
at hande, with a wonderfull multitude of the orpen-
ralles, hauing, as it seemeth, iuste occasion of warre.
For we sytste prouoked them, with breche of our pro-
mise, and mouing war agaynst them, when thei were
in quiete tranquillitie. All the Romayne Emppze, &
strength, lyeth in your valiaunt prowesse, and faith-
full allegyaunce. We doo not now contende, for oure
owne boudes, and kyuerse, with a mighty, and paif-
saunt kynge: but we muste nowe syghte, for the saufe
garde of our owne lyues, and all ours, seynge he is
comme, to reuenge the murder, of his chyldren, kyn-
red, and subiectes, (who were by vs slaine) as he thin-
keth, contrarie to all equitie, and truethe. Wherefore,
lette vs nowe fall to Armes, and (as the Romaynes
are accustomed) obserue a iuste order, in oure batay-
les. For the Barbarouse multytude, beyng rude, and
oute of order, may happen thereby, to do them selues
domage. But your order, agremente, and knowledge
in warrefare, as they defende your saufegarde, euyr
so, doo thei woork the youre enemyes destruction. I
would therfore, that you shoulde with haulte courage,
and hope of victorie, so syghte, as it becommeth Ro-
maynes
D. iij.

A foze
battayle.

mains: & as you haue cōtinually hitherunto done. So shall ye not onelye vanquy the Barbarous people, but also, haupnge obtayned a famous renoumed glorie, adde vnto the Romaynes, and all other, a perfect confidence, that the former Conquest was achieved, not by fraudulent discepte, but by notable valiauntnes, and strengthe. When he had thys muche spoken, the Souldiours perceauynge the necessitye presente, fell vnto armes, and set them selues in order of battayle. At the rysyng of the Sonne, they saue Artabanus, marchynge forwarde with an huge armye. And as sone as the Barbarous people had, accordynge to theyr vsage, worshypped the Sonne, furthwith, they ran at the Romaynes, wpth a mighty, and clamorous shoute, shoting from their horses, manye arrowes, and dartes. But the Romaynes (hauyng strongly planted theyr fronte, distributed the Mauritanian horsemen, on eyther syde, and receaued into the mids of theyr battaile, the Similantines, and lyght horsemen) resisted valiauntlye the Barbarous people at the fyrste, the which bered them greuously, with the multitude of arrowes, & longe speares, wherewith the men at armes that rode on Camelles, & horses, foughte and skirmished. On thother syde, the Romaynes (as ofte as they moued forwarde) easelye obtayned the better. But when they wer oppressed with the Barbarous horsemen, & Camelles, faining to flea, they planted Caltrops, & other engins of yron, sharpe at thone eand in y groude. The whiche beyng hid vnder the sand, & seen of no man, were very pernicious, vnto the horsemen, & those that rode vpon the Camelles. For, after that they were fallen, on the same Caltropes, the horses, and specially the Camels (for that the same beast hath very tender hooves) became furthwith lame, and ouerthrowe theyr riders. The Barbarous people, as long as they sate on their horses, and Camelles, fought very fierly. But when they eyther alighted, or were ouerthrowen, they were easelye taken. For then, they durst not abide the battayle. And yf they should flea, or pursue theyr enemies, they were

Interrup-

A longe
battayle.

A mer-
uaylous
ouer-
throwe.

interrupted, with longe and wyde garmentes, rechyng downe to theyr heeles. The battayle continued two dayes, from mornynge to nyghte. The nyghte seuered them, and cyther armye retourned into their Campes, as Conquerours. The thyrde day, they met in the playne, presse, to daraigne battayle. Then the Barbarous people, attempted, as those whiche were many more in number, to compasse the Romains, and entangle them, as it were, in a nette. But the Romaynes, seynge the same, ioynd not together, in a reunde compasse, but set them selues in a longe front, that they myghte thereby, prohibyte the compassynge of theyr enemies. And there was so great a multitude of men, and beastes, slayne, that all the fildie, was ouerwhelmed wpth them: and a wonderfull number of dead carcases, were heaped in greate brighte, especiallye of Camelles, the whiche laye one vpon another. Whereby, there was not scope ynough, for the Souldiours to fyghte. For so manye carcases were heaped togethers, that they coulde scarcelye moue to and fro. Wherefore, they retyned into theyr campes. Howe Macrinus, knowynge that the Barbarous kynge foughte so vehementlye, for none other cause, but that he thoughte, Antonyne to be presente, in the battayle, sente certayne Ambassadors, vnto hym wpth letters (for althoughe the Barbarous people, are accustomed after a lytle skymysynge, to were saynte, and werpe, and to leue of theyr begonne enterprise, yf at the fyrste brynte, it prospereth not, accordynge to theyr myndes: yet then they persisted, readev to renewe the fyghte, as soone as they had burned the dead bodpes, beyng ignorant, that he was dead, whiche had caused thys myschiese, and calamitie) in the whiche letters, he certifyed hym, that the Emperoure was deade, and hadde receyued condigne punishment, for the violatynge of his othe, and promise: And that the Romaynes, had deliuered the Empyre, and gouernaunce of all affayres, into his handes, who was wonderfullye displeased, wpth the thynge alreadye done.

D. iiii.

Wherefore

The Historie of Herodian.

Wherefore, he woulde deliuer the captiues, and all other spoiles, he had taken: couetyng of hys enemye, to become his confederat, and frend, and to establishe truce betwene them, by othe, & sacrifice. After these letters were redd, and Artabanus aduertised by the Ambassadors, of the death of Antonyne, accompting that he which had broken the peace, was sufficientlie punished, and beyng contente, that the pyloners, shoulde be restored, without more effusion of bloude, and with them all the pray, and botie, he tooke agreement, and truce with Macrinus, and returned towards hys owne palaice. And the Romaine Emperour led hys armye out of Mesopotamie, and marched to Antioche.

The ende of the fourth booke.

The Argumente of the fyfth boke of the Herodian.



The fyfth boke reciteth the causes, for the whiche Macrinus, lost the fauor of the Souldiours; who chafe Bassianus Emperour, & named him Antonyne. The batailles made agaynst Macrinus, the ouerthrowe of hym, and his armye, with hys death. And thinsolence of Antonyne, after he was Emperour. And how he adoynted his colyn Alerpanus, otherwise named Alexander, and made hym hys felowe in the Empire. And finallye it telleth the causes, wherfore, and how, Antony and Soemias hys Moother, were slayne.

And how he adoynted his colyn Alerpanus, otherwise named Alexander, and made hym hys felowe in the Empire. And finallye it telleth the causes, wherfore, and how, Antony and Soemias hys Moother, were slayne.

The fyfth booke of the

Hyforye of Herodian.

Fo. lviij.



I haue in the former Booke, treated, of the Raigne, death, & destruction, of Anthonine. When Macrinus was come vnto Antyoche, he sente letters vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, in thys forme.

Forasmuche, as your selues perfectlie knowe, what hath bene the trade of my lyfe from the beginning, howe muche my manner haue bene vnto gentlenes, and what clea-

mency I haue shewed towards you, in that my dygnitie, whiche dyffered not muche from the hygheste tyte of dominion, (for the Emperour alwaies committeth the custodie of him selfe, vnto the fydelytie of hys Pretor) I thinke it superfluous, vnto many wordes vnto you. Your selues are not ignorant, & I allowed not, the thynges by Anthonine done: wherby for your sakes, I was ofte in peril of my life: whyles he, geuig credit vnto euery vniuall accusation, as a man void of reason, imagined your hole destruction, he bled to checke me ofte times, vpbayding me openly for my modest humanytie, and calling me sluggish, & cockney. For beinge a man delited wth flattery, whoso euer incensed him to flagitiousse crueltie, or prouoked to malice & furious sensualitie, of his fraticke brayne, or els sturred wth accusacions, hys exasperate madnes, thole he accompted, his most trusty, secrete, and faithfull frendes. But for my part, there hath bene nothing more acceptable vnto me from the beginninge, then discrete modestie. We haue now so finished, this meruelous Parthian warre, wherin thole Romaine Emperour stode in hysarde, that beyng nothing inferioure

R. l.

in

in fpyghte, vnto our aduersaries, we haue made the: mighti king, of an extreme enemy, our faithful frede: Who brought against vs, an innumerable multitude of people. Further, whiles I am your Prince, ye shall lyue freely, wout trouble of discencion. So y, ye shall haue cause, to name my gouernance, rather a cōfession of good me, the an Empire. Neither is ther any occasion, why any man shuld iudge me vnworthy to be Emperour, or impute it to anye faulte of fortune, that being but a knight, I haue attained the Princippall Soueraignite. For of what effecte, or value, I praye you, is y the nobilityt it selfe, yf it be not cōiorned w gētle, & meeke clemencie? And the gyftes of fortune, doo bewtifie many vnworthily: but y vertue of the minde, byingeth vnto euery man, vsing the same, a peculier glorie. And although the nobilityt of byrth, & kindred, w abundaunce of treasure, is accompted the proper substance, of blessed men, yet are not y same in them cōmēded, as frō them selves issuing, but as deliuered of others. But gentle mekenes, & modest affability, as theibe to be wōdded at, so doo thei win much prayse, vnto the hauer. For what profited you, the nobilityt of Commodus, & the successiō of Anthonine, after his father? Certes, such hauing obtained thepyre, as it were, their iust inheritaunce, are wonte to abuse it, as their priuate patrimony. But thei, whiche receaue the same at your handes, being as it were, bounden of dutie vnto you, endeouour them selves, to requit your manifold benefites. Further y natie nobilitie of Princes, chāgeth ofte times into pryde, despying al others, as their inferiours. But thei, whiche haue obtained y same, thzough prose of modesty, do desed, & ordre it, as a thing gotē by laboz, & haue al those in reuerence, whiche thei had before time. And I for my part, am fully determined, to do nothing, wout your counsel, & authority, & to vse you, as sole assaistants, & Consayllors in thaffaires of y cōmē wealth. And ye shall al lyue, at your owne pleasures, w the same libertie, (whiche bringe by yōge Emperors, succeeding their parētes, takē away frō you) both Marcus, & Pertinax, endeouored, & intended

entēded, to restore vnto you again. Both the which, aspired to thepyre, frō priuate estate, & degree. For it is much better for a mā, to leue vnto his posteritie, y beginninge of his kynred, by him selfe adozned, then to defile w sensuall maners, y nobilitie vnto hym from his predecessors, descended. After this Epistle was red, al thole Senate wth one voice, decreed the honour of Augustus, vnto Macrinus. Neither was the Senate so ioyfull, w the successiō of Macrinus, as the cōmon people were glad, w the death of Anthonine. For euery mā (as he excelled in aucthoritie, & riches, so much the more he reckened, y he had auoided y sword, whiche before hēge ouer his shulders. Then wer al byrbed Promoters, Accusers, & Seruaūtes, whiche had betrayed their Masters, & Lord, hāged wō Gibbettes. And al thole Citie, yea, thole Romaine Empire, was closed, of al false Barlotes, Macabūdes, & Wickedhakes. Of y which, som were out of hād put to deathe, other some punished w banishment. And yf any of the laye hid, for feare of good me y wer now at rest, y same thewed som apparaunce of libertie, by the space of one yere in y which onely Macrin⁹ entoyed thepyre. For that the fault was his only fault, y he furthw dismissed not thole ar of Macrimy, & hauig set euery mā to his owne Cōtrepy, him self nus, cānot immediatli to Rome, which was veri desirous of him, (the people euery day loking, & callig for him.) But he remained at Antioche, in delicat lyfe, & vfed a slower pace in going, the he was before accustomed, geuing answer rarely, & scarcely, vnto Ambassadors, & other persons, y cam vnto him, & the same w so low a voice, y none could well vnderstād him. And in y doynge, he endeouored, to folow Marcus, but to the resydw of his condicions, he did in no point attaine. For he vfed daily voluptuose diet, taking pleasure in dāsyng, and wasselyng, neglectinge the regimēte of thempyre, & wearing Agglets of Golde, & a Gyrdle adozned with precious stones. The which sumpteouse appaile, was nothig gratefull vnto the Souldiours. For thei esteemed it more congruente, to the Barbarous people, and women, then to thepyr Prince.

Wherefore, in beholding thiese thinges, thei greatly rejoyced it, and despyed the trade of hys lyfe, as a thing moze wanton, then became a warlike person. And they compared the wanton sensualitye of Macrinus, and the wyttie, and warlike manners of Antonine. Further, they greatly grudged, that they laye still in the Campe, farre fro their native Countrey, oftentimes wanting their necessary foode, and were not discharged home, after peace made, & truce taken, whyles he, led hys lyfe in wanton pleasures. Wherefore, hauynge thowen, as it were, the byrdle out of their mouthes, thei spake euery daye agaynst him, seeking some occasion, were it euer so small, to slea hym. And so it was by destinye appoynted, that Macrinus, after he had one onely yeare voluptuouly reigned, should lose, both hys Empryre & his lyfe: fortune hauing ministred, lyght, and synple occasyon to the Souldiours, to commytte, that thei had desired. There was a certen Phenicien woman, named Boela, borne in a Citie of Phenicia called Emesa, Sister vnto Julia the wyfe of Seuerus, & Moother of Anthonine. Who during the Reigne of Seuerus, and Anthonine, and the lyfe of Julia, had dwelte in the Emperours Palayce. The same Boela, after the death of her Sister, and murdre of Anthonine, Macrinus had commaunded, to retourne into her owne Countrey, w all her substance. And in sothe, she was wonderfull ryche of money, as one whiche of verye longe tyme, had bene brought by within thimperiall Treasourie. And being retourned home, she there continually remayned, hauynge two daughters: of the whiche the eldest hyght Soemis, and the yonger was named Pammea. The eldze had a Sone called Bassianus, and the yonger had an other named Alerianus. Bothe these yonge me, were brought vp vnder their Moothers, & Grandmoother. Bassian, was fourtene yeres olde, and Alerianus. v. Thei were priestes of the Sonne, whiche then habitauntes of that contrey, do chiefly worship: naming it in the Phenicien tongue Helogabalus. Vnto hym haue thei dedicated, a very greate

Phenicia
Boela
Emesa.

Soemis
Pam-
mea.
Bassian-
Alerian-

Helogaba-
lus.

great Temple, decked, and adorne, with abundaunce of Golde, Syluer, and pzeioue stones. And not onely then habytantes them selues, do worshippe it, but all the noble menne also of the nexte nacions, and the Barbarouse kynges, doo euerye yeare offer vnto it, sumptuose, and pzeioue gyftes. There is no ymage made after the Romayne, and Grecien facion, lyke vnto thys God. For it is a myghty stone from the botom sharpened, moze, and moze vnto the toppe, much lyke a Dynaple. The colour of the stone is blacke, whiche they repute to be fallen oute of heauen. In the same stone, are sene very many formes, and colours, which they affirme, to be the shap of the Sonne, made by no mans hande. Vnto this ymage was Bassianus sacred priest. And because he was tholder, hym selfe moste commonlye executed the office, apparelled gorgeously after the Barbarous maner. For he ware a cote wouen with gold, hauing longe sleues, and retchynge downe to hys heeles. Hys legges were couered from the hames to the toes, with lyke vesture of golde, and purple. And he ware on hys head, a garland of freshe floures, shynynge with colours. He was then besydes in the floure of hys youth, and the beautifullest of all yonge men, at that tyme lyuynge. And because hys beautye, wyth the proportion of his bodye, the floure of hys age, and his gorgeous decked apparel, wer so agreable togethers, men compared him, vnto the goodly Images of Dionys. Nowe whyles thys Bassianus was celebrating the sacrifice, and dauncynge after the Barbarous maner, men dyd attentiuely loke vpon him: but chiefly the Romayne Souldiours (either for that they knew him to be of the Imperiall bloude, or elles, because hys folyng beautye, allured euerye man, to cast hys eyes towarde hym) for the Romayne hoste laye then nyghe that Epyre: beyng sente thither, for the defence of Phenicia, and shortly after departed from thence, as we shall hereafter declare. As they resorted to the Church daylye, throughe the pretence of religion, they gladly behelde the yonge man. Amonges them

certaine banished Romaynes, familiar with Moesa. Whome she perceyvinge, to wonder at the beantie of this Striplinge, reported vnto the, that he was the Sonne of Antonine, although he were supposed otherwise: doubtfull it is, whether she spake the truth, or not. For she said, y whiles she abode in thimperial palace, with her sister, Antonine had to do with her. ii. daughters, being then yong & faire. This being once told vnto them, & by them told againe vnto the residue of their felowes, was furthwith published throughtout thole Campe. It was besides reported, that Moesa had whole heapes of money, which she would gladly distribute amonges the souldiours, if they wold restore thempire, vnto her issue. They promised her therfore, (yf she would come priuely by night into the Campe) to open the gate, & receaue her w her folkes in. For the which promise, the olde woman denied them nothyng that they dyd demaunde: being contente, rather to attempt, or take in had any daunger, the to lede a priuat, & abiect life. Therfore she departed secretly by night out of y citie, w her daughters & newewes, & was conueyed, by the afore named fugitiues, into the Campe. And beinge into the same wythout interruption receaued, furthewith all the Souldiours called the yong man Antonine, apparelled hym wyth purple, and kepte hym with a sure garde, amonges them for a while. Then they broughte all the vitayls, and necessaries, that they coulde gette, in the nexte bylages, and felde, wyth they wyues, and children, into the Campe. And so fortified them selues within the same, that yf nede required, they myght abyde the siege. When these thinges were reported vnto Macrinus, then sojournyng at Antioche, and a rumour was spred throughout the host, that Antonynes son was soude, & that the sister of Julia, gaue money vnto the Souldiours, when all that was spoken of, or thoughte to be possible, was holden for trewe, every man beganne to doubt, and reuolt from Macrinus: spred partly ther vnto, through the hate they bare vnto him, & partelye through the pitie, whiche they had of the memozye of Antonynes

Bassianus named Antonine & called vnto them pite.

Antonine: but especially encensed, w desire, & hope, of monie. So y furthw many fled vnto y new Antonine. But Macrinus, cotempnyng thole matter as childish, & blyng his accustomed alacritie of minde, abode hym self at home, & sent one of his capytains furth, with as great a power, as seemed sufficient, for the subduing of the rebelles. But when Julianus (for that was the Capitains name) came thither, & began to lay siege to the walles, the Souldiours y were within, shewed fro their Towers, & other high places, the yong man: crying with loude voices, that he was y Son of Antonine, & lifting by great bagges of monie, which are the only baite of treason. And they crediting, that he was Antonines son in deade, & because they wolde haue it so appeare, esteeming also his face, & liniamentes of bodye to be verie lyke, strake of Julianus head, and sent it vnto Macrinus. That ended, the gates of the fortresse were opened, and them selves receiued in. Thus was they power augmented, able, not onely to abide a siege, and repulse an assaulte, but also, to pytche a fiede, a great number of fugitiues, dayly resortyng vnto them. When Macrinus heard therof, he incontynently marched forwarde with thole armie, to assaulte the fortresse. And Antonine led his power fath against him, for that his Souldiours woulde not tari the siege, beyng able ynough to fyght in playne battayle. Then bothe the armyes encountred together, in the confynes of Phenicia, and Syria. On the one side, Antonines Souldiours fought more courageously, through feare of greuous punishment, if they were vauquished. On thother side, tharmie of Macrinus, fought faintly, amonges whō many reuolted vnto Antonine. The which when Macrinus perceaued, fearinge, lest beinge forsakinge of his all men, he should be taken prisoner, & suffer great reproche, whiles his souldiours fought, he threw away his Cote armour, & other imperial oznamēts, & being accompanied with a few of his meanest souldiours, he fled awai. And hauing shauen his beard, least he should be knowē, & clad in a simple garmēt, & his head, & face, continuallye covered

Julianus.

A conflict.

couered, he traunayled both night & day, pzenenting id
celeritie, the same of his fortune. For as yet hys men
foughte w great prowes, as though Macrin^{us} possessed
stil the pyre. He so escaped, as we befoze haue declared.
In the meane whyle, the Souldyours on eyther side
fought valiauntlye. And of Macrinus syde, the men
at armes of hys garde, named Pretorians, sustayned
alone the whole burnte. For they were talle, & mighty
men, and chosen, and approued warrours. The reste
of the multitude, toke Antonynes parte. But when
they, whiche a great whyle had foughten for Macri-
nus, coude neyther see Macrinus hym selfe, nor the
Imperiall Diademe, and oznamentes, beyng igno-
raunte where he was become, whether he were slaine
or elles fledde, they wyfte not what counsaile to
take. And althoughe they purposed no longer to fight
for hym, whych appeared, or coude be founde no
where, yet feared they, to yeld them selues, vnto theyr
enemys power, as recreant, and vanquished Sub-
iectes. Then Antonyne, knowyng by the Captiues,
that Macrinus was fledde, sent incontinently, to ad-
uertise them, that they in bayne foughte for a timo-
rous and fugitiue Colward: promysynge them on his
othe, that he woulde forgyue, and forget, all that was
by them done, and vse theym from thencefozthe, for
the garde of hys personne. The which, they all credi-
tyng, ceased furthwith from further fyghtynge.
Then Antonyne without delaye, sent certayne after
Macrinus, who was longe befoze escaped. And be-
yng founde in Chalcedon a Cytie of Bythinia,
verye sore sycke, and woone throughe hys conty-
nuall traunayll, and hydden in a house of the Subur-
bes, had hys head there smytten of. It is thoughte,
that he mynded to go to Rome, affynge hym selfe in
the beneuolence of the people. But in saylynge to-
wardes Europe, in the narowe Sea of Propontis,
nygh vnto Bizantium, a contrarious wynde draue
hym backe, as it were of purpose, towarde the place,
where he shoulde synne hys lyfe. Thus happened it,
that Macrinus escaped not, by sleynge awaie, the
bandes

The pre-
torian
men of
armes.

Chalcedon

The death
of Macri-
nus.
Propontis.
Bizanti-
um.

bandes of his enemies: receauing a bylanouse death,
and intending to late to goo to Rome, when he shold
in the beginning haue done the same, and hauing at
this his ende, berthe his counsell, and fortune, cleane
against him. After this sorte, was Macrinus slayne,
wyth hys Sonne Syadumenus, whome a lytle be-
foze, he had associated vnto him, in the pyre. Now at
ter thole army had pronouced Anthonine for Empe-
rour, when him selfe had taken vpon hym the chiefe
gouernaunce of the mynys, and all the oriental affay-
res were sette in order, as euery one most needed, by
the discretion of his Graundmoother, and other his
frendes, (for that hym selfe was verye yonge of age,
and unskillfull in matters of greate importaunce) so
iourning there but a shorte space, he caused hys re-
mouing to be proclaimed, accordynge to the wyll of
Poela, which chiefly coueted, and made hast, towar-
des the impervall Pallace of Rome, wherewith, he
so longe befoze hadde bene acquaynted. When the
Senate, and people of Rome, harde of thiese thinges,
euery man began to be sorowfull, with the tidynge.
But thei muste of force, and necessitye, then allow it,
seynge he was chosen, by the men of war. And accu-
singe within them selues, the negligent mynde, and
sensuall maners, of Macrinus, thei imputed thole de-
faulte of his ouerthrowe, vnto hys owne slouth, and
to none other man, as causer thereof. Anthonine be-
ynge departed out of Siria, wintred his army at Si-
comedia, the season of the yere so constraining him.
Then he began to ware insolent aboue measure, ce-
lebratyng dailye the honour of his Countrey God, with
superfluouse, and vndecent pompe, & daunces.
Hym selfe was cladde in wanton, and luxurious ap-
parel, wouen wyth Purple, and Golde, decked with
Duches, and Braceletes, Chaynes, and Kynges of
Golde, & ware a Crowne like vnto a Chaplet, ado-
ned with Golde, and precious stones. The forme of
hys habyte, was, as it were, a meane, betwene the
Phenicien, and Median Apparayle. He despised the
Romaine garmetes, because thei were made of wolle,
S. l. the

Macrin^{us}
and hys
Sonne
Diadu-
menus
slayne.
Anthoni-
ne full
Empe-
rour.

Alcome
dia.
Thinsolence
of
Antonyne.

**Malne sa
grifces.**

The Image of Pallas.

Urania.

Carthage.
Astroarche.

But soone after, he altered that mynde, sayenge, that it was vnpleasaunt for his God, to haue a warlyke, & armed wyfe. And therefore he commaunded the ymage of Urania, to be brought vnto hym. The whych was chylde woꝛshipped of y^e Carthaginienes, & al Africque supposed to be erected by Wido the Phenicia, when she builded Carthage, wⁱⁿ the copace of an ore hide. This Goddesse, the Africans name Urania. And the Pheniciens cal her Astroarche, affirming her to be the Moone. Wherefore, he said, that the Mariage of the Sonne & the Moone was agreable. Her Image therfore, he caused to be broughte fourthe, and all the Golde, and Siluer, which was in her Temple, he commaunded to be given to his God for a dowre. And after it was brought, and set vp by the Image of Helcogabalus, he commaunded feastfull daies, w^{yth} banquetting, and solemnitie, to be celebrated openly, & pryncely, throughtout thole Cytie, and Italy, for the Mariage of the Goddes. He builded also in the Suburbes, a mighty, & sumptuous Temple: into y^e whyche, in the ende of Summer, he caried his God. Thynking that he muche pleased the people, with hys Enterludes & Comedies, with his open bakets, & nyght watches. He conieied his God, as I said, out of the City, into y^e Suburbes, in a Chariot adozned wth Golde, & precious stones, drawne by .vi. goodlye white horses, of great height, notably decked with Golde, and varietie of harnesse. No man rode in that Chariot, but the people ran on euery syde of it, gasinge vpon the God. And Anthonine hym selfe rode before the Chariot, wth his face backward towards the horse taylor, & wth beholding y^e image, continually as he rode, he so finished this his sonde tozney. And leass he should fall, oz syde vniwares, in that his vniwysle ridinge, he caused the stretes to be thicke couered with sate, & his Card helde hym on eyther syde, that he might wth more safety sit on his horse. The people ran about him wth torches & Crisettes, strowinge of floures, & Garlandes, in his waie. There accompanied besides this Pope, y^e images of al y^e Goddes, & al other precious ornaments which were

The me-
re folpe,
of Anto-
wyne.

wer in y^e Temples, the tokens of honoz, & y^e beautifullest household stuffe of the Empire, wth the men at armes, & al the Romayn host. When he had brought these thinges into the Temple, layed the same there, and finished hys sacrifice, he went vp into the hyghe towers, whych wer of purpose there erected, & out of them, he threwe manye thynges amonges the people. That is to wete, cuppes of Syluer and Golde, garmentes of ryche woꝛke, and all sortes of linnen clothe. He distributed amonges them also, all kynde of tame beastes, except Swyne, from the whyche (accordynge to the Phenicien vsage) him selfe abstained. In the catching wherof, many perished: some beyng thrust to deathe in the presse, other some slayne wth the Souldyours weapons. So that the same festiuall Pompe, was turned into a dolorous calamitie of manye men. Hym selfe besydes, was manye tymes sene cartynge, and leappynge. For he woulde not permitte hys owne flagitious exercises to be hydden: goynge often tymes abrode, wth hys eyes painted, his browes made red, and hys face beyng naturallye beautifull, deformed, wth vndercent colours. The whiche when Mela perceived, suspectynge the indignation of the Souldyours, and fearynge, that yf oughte but good came vnto hym, her selfe shoulde be constrayned, to retourne to her priuate lyfe, she perswaded the foolish, and rash yonge man, to adopte into the Empire with him hys kynsman, and her newewe, beyng bozne of her daughter Hammea. And that she myght the better please hym, she sayde, that he, whiche executed only the office of a Priest, & celebrated the sacrifices of the Goddes, ought to haue some Substitute, which shoulde gouerne the Empire, out of care, and trouble. Nowe was ther no straunger, nor forreyn person, so meete to be elected thereunto, as hys owne kynsman. The same was Alerianus, whiche then was called Alexander, by hys fathers name, chaunged into the name of the Macedonien kynge. For the same kynge, being of great renowne, dyd Anthonine the Sonne of Seuerus, chiefely reuerence. Whiche Anthonine, they

Alexan-
der made
Empe-
roure.

Graundmother perswaded the Souldoyours, to be the father of them both: blaspheming thereby, the Fornication of her daughters, that she might thereby cause the Souldoyours the better to loue them. Wherefore Alexander was declared Emperoure, and created Consul with Antonyne: the Senate determining with skorne, and laughter, that whiche Antonyne required. That is to saye, hym selfe, beinge but fourtene yeares olde, to be the father, and Alexander, whiche was then entred the twelueeth yere of his age, to be the Sonne. After Alexander was pronounced Emperoure, Antonyne endeouored to corrupte him, with his sensuall maners, that in syngynge, and daunsynge, beinge partaker of his Priesthode, he shoulde weare the same apparell, and vse the same fashions with hym. But Hammea the Moother of Alexander, preserued hym from all dishonestie, and fletcherie lyfe, byngynge hym vp priuely vnder diuers learned men, in litterature, modestie, and good maners: accustomynge hym vnto wastefylng, and other decent exercises, and instructynge hym, in the Greeke, and Latyn tongue. Whereat Antonine greatly grieved, repentinge him of his adoption, and participation of the Emprye. And therefore, he expelled out of his Palace, all those Instructours, of whome some the excellentest, he put to death, and thother he afflicted with exile, allegynge agaynst them, foolishhe, and baine causes, that they corrupted his Sonne, not suffering hym to vse libertie, and daunsynge, but instructinge hym, in modest, and comelye exercises. And he fell into suche extreme folie, that he distributed the chiefe dignities, in the common wealth, amonges players of Comedies, and Enterludes. For he made Liuentiaunt generall of the Armys, a certayne daunsier, whiche in his youth, had bene a common player vpon Scaffoulds. Another of the same rabel, he appoynted gouernour of the youth, and another, chiefe of the order of knyghthode. Vnto Carters, Ruffians, and disordered Brotheis, he commytted the chiefe charge of the Emprye. And vnto his Bonde men and

And Lybertynes, as euerye of them exceeded another in abomination, he dispouered the rule of the Prynces. Thereby, all rynges, whiche before were honest, were touned into hyle beastlyneste: whiche caused that all men, and chiesely the Romayne Souldoyours, detested hym, as one whych fashyoned his countenaunce, more wantonlye, then became any honeste woman. For he was decked with chaynes, and ouches of golde, and apparelled with lasciuious clothynge, vncomelye for a man, and daunsed daylye in the syght of them all. Wherefore they bare more beneuolent myndes vnto Alexander, and had better confidence in that Child, for that he was modestly brought vp. And they all saued hym, from y treason, and myschiefe of Antonyne. Neyther woulde his Moother Hammea, suffer hym to touche any meate, or drynke, that was sent from the other. The chylde also vsed not any of the Imperiall, or common Cookes, and Waiters, but suche as his Moother had chosen for hym, whiche were both trusty and honest. She gaue hym money also to distribute priuelye amonges the Souldoyours, whiche chiesely couete the same, that he myghte by it, as by a sure lynked Chayne, drawe them vnto hym.

When Antonyne perceaued that, he inuented all the mischiefes he coulde agaynst Alexander, and his Moother. Neuerthelesse, they common Graundmother Moesa aboyded all suche crueltie. For she was a woman of a stout corage, and had also of longe tyme sojourned in the Imperiall Palace, with her Sister Seuerus wyfe, whereby she was throughe skilfull of that whiche Antonyne intended: who was naturallie full of talke, and wythoute discretion, accustomed to blase abrode, what soeuer he mynded, as woulde haue done. And then seyng his enterpryse not to proceade, as he wyshed, he determined to deprive the Chylde all of Imperiall honours. And therefore, commaunded that he shoulde be no longer saluted as Emperoure, neyther woulde he suffer hym to go abrode amonges the people.

But

But the Souldiours desyred hym wonderfullve, dis-
daynyng that the Empire should be taken from him.
Then Anthonine caused a rumoure to be blowen a-
broad, that Alexander was deade, to the entente he
myght thereby perceave, after what sorte, the Soul-
dours woulde take the same. But they seynge the
chylde not appeare abrode, and haupnge they hartes
perfed wth those sorowefull tidynge, wared won-
derfull wrothe, withelde from Antonine hys accu-
stomed garde, and haupnge shutte the gates of they
Campe, sayde, they woulde perforce see Alexander,
within they Temple. Antonyne beyng thereby smit-
ten wth feare, rode vnto the Campe in the Imperi-
all Chariot, beyng adorned wth precious stons,
wherin also sat Alexander. Whome the Souldiours,
(after they were bothe entred into the Campe, and
brought into the Temple therof) saluted aboue mea-
sure: folowynge hym wth ioyfull acclamations, and
utterly as I myghte saye, contempnyng Antonyne.
He beyng ther wth meruaylously chaufed, after he
had lven one nyght within the Temple, and noted the
Souldours, whyche had shouted vnto Alexander,
commaunded them all to be put to deathe, as authours
of sedicion, and rebellion. They therat disdaynyng,
and abhorrynge before tyme Antonyne, wysshynge al-
so to dispatche out of life, that monstrous Emperour
and to helpe they Companions, and perceauynge the
tyme to be apte for the deede, furthwyt hewe Anto-
nyne hym selfe, and hys Woorther Soemis, who was
by chaunce at that tyme ther present, and with them,
all they Seruantes, and ministers of vice, that came
wth them into the Campe. Then they deliuered by
to the common peopie, the bodies of Antonyne, and
Soemis, to be drawen wth shame, throughtoute the
Streets of the Citty. The people dyd so, and then they
them into the common synkes, that they myght be ca-
rried into Tyber. And the Souldours, haupnge sa-
luted Alexander for Emperoure, brought hym into
The Imperiall palaice, beyng verpe vange, and as yet
obedient vnto the commaunders of his grandmother.

Finis.

Antonyne
ne hys
Woorther
Rayne.

The Argumente of the syxte Booke of Herodian.

Fol. lxxvi.

In the syxte Booke, the Authour treateth of the
bountie and clemencie, of Alexander, & the aua-
rice, of his Woorther Dammea. Of the warre,
made by Artaxerxes kynge of Persia, and the
occasion therof. Against whome Alexander ap-
parayled a great army, and deuided it into thre
partes. Then ensuen, the causes wherefore,
Alexander losse the loue of the Souldiours.
Who in the beginning of the warre, against the
Germanes, chase Maximinus Emperour, whi-
che procured Alexander, with his Woorther, and
all hys frendes to be slayne.

The syxte booke of the Hystorie of Hero- dian.



It is manifestly, in the for-
mer booke, declared, what
ende of lyfe, had Anthoni-
ne theldre. After whome,
Alexander alone possessed
the name, and regimete,
of The Empire. But thadmi-
nistracion of all affayres,
and gouernaunce of the
weale publique, appertai-
ned to the women: who en-
deuored to reduce all thin-
ges, to their pristinaie seemelynes, and modesty. For
first of all, they elected. xvi. of the ordre of Senators,
excelling in grauity of maners, and cōtingencie of life,
to be assistaite & of preyntours Counsaill. Theperoz, w-
out the consent of whiche Counsaillours, there was
nothing, either in word, or writig, cōsyrmed. Where
by this forme of p̄cipality becam grateful vnto h̄m
at

Alexander
& the Em-
perre, ru-
led by wo-
men.

at Armes, and Senate of Rome, for that it was chaſti-
ged, from moſte peſſiferous Tyranny, vnto the ouer-
ſight, and rule of noble men. Then were the ymages
of the Goddes, whiche Anthonine in hys lyfe tyme,
had remoued oute of theyr Seates, reſtozed agayne
into theyr owne Temples, and places. Then were all
thoſe, whiche Anthonine had raſhelye, for their cruell
maners, aduanced vnto highe dignities, depoſed, &
ſet to their accuſtomed lyfe, and occupacion. Then
all Ciuyle, and ſoeyne matters of iudgemente, were
apoynted to thoꝝding of wyſe, and proſoude learned
men, in the lawes: And all warlike aſſayres, comit-
ted to the rule, of valiaunte Capitaines, and experte
men of warre. When Themppze had bene after thys
ſorte a greate ſpace gouerned, Deca whiche was be-
ry aged, ended her life. Vnto whome, all imperial ho-
nours were appoynted, and, as the Romayne blaſe
is, ſhe was canonized wth immortalite. After
her death, Hammea, perſeuering her ſelfe to be leaſte
alone vnto her Sone, endeouored to continue the
ſame forme of gouernement, which was begun. And
ſeynge that the yonge man, enioyed nowe alone thole
dominion, ſhe feared leſſe his yonge age, ſhoulde wa-
loſe in extreme libertie, and thereby fall into ſome of
his kinſmans vices. Wherefore ſhe aſwayted wel his
perſon, and all places of the Court: not ſufferig him,
to be approached vnto, of any yonge man, whoſe lyfe,
and maners, were ſuſpected, leaſt that his good dyſ-
poſitiō, ſhoulde be corrupted, through Paraſytes, and
flatterers, which wold prouoke his minde, & appeti-
te, then floꝝiſhing, into wāton & naughty affections.
She perſwaded him, to exercyſe hys body, in decente
recreacions, the better parte of the daye, and that be-
ry often, leſſe there ſhoulde be anye ſpace leſſe, for yll
thoughtes, whyles he myghte be better occupied, in
apoynting thinges neceſſary to be done. There was
naturallly beſides in Alexander a geēle, and meeke diſ-
poſition, bent vnto aſſabilitie. The which thyng, his
age folowing, made apparaunte. For. xliii. yeares,
he gouerned Themppze, withoute effuſion of bloode,
not as muche as one man, in that time, throughte his

The death
of Herod
The wife
domie of
Hammea.

procurement, beyng put to death. And although ma-
ny, thꝛough greuouſe offences, iuſtly deſerued death,
yet dyd he euermore abſteyne from the execution of
them. The whiche thing, a man ſhall not eaſely finde,
in any Emperour, eſpecially in thoſe whiche ſuccē-
ded Marcus. No man can remember, that (whyles he
raigned,) any was without iudgement put to death.
He accuſtomed to reſpiche his Moother, & blame
her greatly, for that ſhe was ſomewhat coueyrouſe of
money, and ſeemed ouer greedy in heaping of Trea-
ſures. For taking vpon her, that ſhe gathered money
togethers, to enryche Alexander withall, & he myght
therby, moze abundantly beſtowe gyftes vpon the
Souldiours, ſhe ſpyled her owne Coſſers, wth the
ſame. The whiche her couetyſe, blempyſhed greatly
Themperours honour, that mangre hys mynde, the
couetouſe woman, ſhoulde catche, and pyll, by couine,
and fraude, the enheritaunce of many mē. She gaue
to her Sonne in Mariage, a Mayden deſcended of no-
ble bloode, whome (notwithſtanding that her huſbā
entperlye loued her) her ſelfe thoꝝtlye after expelled
Thimperiall pallaice, wth greate obloquy, & ſhame.
And coueyting her ſelfe to be onely named Auguſta,
ſhe enuyed for that cauſe the mayden, and became ſo
outragiouſe agaynſt her, that the maydens father,
(albeit he were in greate authoꝝite wth Alexander)
beyng impacient of the iniury, done vnto his dought-
er, and hym, by Hammea, fledde into the Campe for
his owne ſafegarde, ſaying, although he were muche
bounde vnto Alexander, for hys manifolde benefites,
yet he muſt of force, accuſe Hammea, for the greate
reproche ſhe had done vnto him. But ſhe being ther w-
chaufed, comāūded him to be ſlaine, & y yōge woman
his doughter, beig thruſt out of y imperiall Pallaice,
ſhe fledde into Aphꝛique. Neuertheles this was done
agaĩſt y will of Alexander. For his Moother ruled hym
aboue reaſon, & had hi alway obediēt vnto her comāūde-
mētes: ſo y this one thing may be reproued in Alex-
ander, & he vſed moze humilitie, & reuerence, towardes
his Moother, then becam him, in obeyeng, & accōplyſ-
hing her comāūdement, agaynſt hys owne will.

Alexander
to muche
obedient
vnto hys
Moother

Now whē he had after this sorte, by the space of thir-
tene yeres, raigned, the which tyme, he alone enjoyed
the Emppire, in tranquillity, without disturbaunce,
or complainte, of any person, Sodeinly loo, there cam
letters out of Siria, & Mesopotamia, wherby he was
certified, that Artarerres King of Persia had ouerco-
men the Parthians & Artabanus the 2^d king, which
firste surnamed hi self great, & ware two Crownes,
and not onely bereft him thoziental dominion, but al-
so his lyfe, subdued the Barbarouse people his neigh-
bours, and made them his tributaries. That he helde
not him selfe within the River of Tigris, but had re-
covered the backes therof, & was entred win the bou-
des of Romaine Empire, inuading, & pyllig Mesopo-
tania, & menacing war vnto Siria. That he chalen-
gid all the Scite of Lande called Asia, situate ouer a-
gainst Europe, whiche was enuironed wth the Aegia
Sea, & the straites of Propontis, as the auncient pos-
session of the Persyans. Bicause that frō the tyme of
Cyrus, who first of all translated the kingdome, from
the Medes, to the Persians, vntil the raigne of Dari-
us their last King, (whom Alexander depriued of his
dominion) all thozientall costes, as far as Tonia, and
Caria, were gouerned by the Persian Rulers, & Ca-
pitaines. Wherfore, he affirmed, y^t it was his duty, to
see vnto the restauraciō of y^e aunciēt & whole Empire
vnto the Persians again. Whē Alexander heard herof,
beig greatly disquieted wth those sodeine tidiges of bat-
tyle, (soz he had from his infancie ben traded in qui-
et tranquillity, & nozished wth the Citie pleasures) and
having first consulted wth his frendes, & Counsaillours,
he concluded, to seide Ambassadors into thoziet, with
his letters, which he supposed wold repress the Bar-
bariens hope, and pacify their tumultouse inuasiōs.
The letters were of this sorte directed.
That it behoued Artarerres, to holde him selfe con-
tent wth his owne Boundes, and Limites of dominio.
Not to sturre, or cause anye more dyscencion, nei-
ther beyng puffed wth bayne confydence, and rathe
hope, attempte anye grate warre.

That

That euerye man, ought to quiet hym selfe wth hys
owne substaunce, and that he shoulde not haue suche
successe in hys syghte, agaynst the Romaynes, as he
had obtayned agaynst hys neyghbours. He dyd putte
hym in remembraunce besydes, of the victories, whi-
che Augustus, Traianus, Lucius, and Seuerus, had
gotten agaynst them. Wth these letters, Alexander
Inpposed to reduce the Barbarous kynge vnto peace,
and concorde, throughte feare of the menaces in
them conteyned. But he vtterlye contempnyng the
same, determined (all talke set a parte) to trye the mat-
ter, wth weapon, and syghte. And then wth more
crueltie, foraged, and spoyled, the whole countrey of
Mesopotamia, and carped awaye the Inhabitauntes
as a bootie, and assaulted all suche Fortrelles of the
Romaynes, as were buylded vpon the Riuaige, to de-
fende the boundes of the Romayne Empire.

And being a man naturally glorious, & hauley of sto-
macke, he thought to subdew the whole worlde, endea-
med therewith wth the prosperous successe of all hys
affayres, euer, without loking for, obtayned. Neyther
were the thynges of smale importaunce, whych kyn-
deled hys mynde, to the couetynge of a greater Real-
me, then hys owne: takynge fyrste vpon hym, to in-
uade the Parthians, wth warre, and to recouer the
Parthian kyngdome.

For many yeres, after the death of Darius, from
whome, Alexander the Macedonian, bereft hys kyng-
dome, the Macedonians them selues, and those which Alexander
succeeded Alexander, gouerned y^e regions of the Orient, Der.
and Asia, distributed in sundry partes amongs them.
But when the Macedonian power was greatlye
wozne, through sundrye battayles, growen by discen-
tion amonges them selues, Arsaces the Parthian, is
celyped by Hystories, to be the fyrste Persuader of Arsaces.
the Parthians, to renolte from the Macedonians.
And he, by the consente of the Parthians, and other
Barbarous people hys neyghbours, wearynge on
hys head the Diademe, obtayned the kyngdome, and
lasse the same vnto hys posteritye, euen vnto the time
of

of the kynge Artabanus, whome Artarerres hauing slayne, restored (as it is sayde) the kyngdome vnto the Persians, and broughte in subiection, the nygh Barbarous nations, he dyd nowe prouoke, the Romayne power to armes.

When relacion was made hereof to Alexander at Rome, he determined no longer to heare the insolence of the Barbarous kynge, especiallye seeinge bys Lieutenantes, and Captaynes called hym thither. Finallie, wth greate grudge, and fore agaynst his will, he prepared his expedition into the Orient. And therfore, generall musters were made throughout Italye, and the Provinces, of all suche as seemed apte, eyther in stature of bodye, or strength of yeares. In the same musters, were many muties, and tumultes, amonges the Romayne subiectes, reasonyng, what power myghte be equal, vnto so great a multitude of Barbarous people. And Alexander commaunded all the Pretorian Souldyours, and other men at armes, whyche were at Rome, to repayre into the fieldes: where hym selfe beyng ascended into the Tribunal seate, spake these wordes vnto theym.

The oration of Alexander

I woulde wylle (my seloues in armes) to make suche an oration vnto you, as should (according to the accustomed wont) vnto me the speaker, get loue, and honour, and vnto you the hearers, byng ioye, and gladnes. For seeing we haue now many yeres lyued, in peaceable tranquillitie, yf ye shal heare of any new thing lately happened, peradventure ye wylbe a feard of the same, as of a thynge vnluckely chaunced. Neuertheles, it becommeth valiaunt & moderat men, in dedde to wylle for the beste: but yet to suffer, & take in woorth, what soeuer happeneth. For as the thyng we do with pleasure is swete, and delectable, so is that we do with vertue, comendable, & glorious. And as he which first geueth occasion of warre, seemeth iniurious, euen so he which withstandeth wronge, is more confident in his conscience, & conceaueth a better hope of his quarell, for that it is ryghteous. Artarerres a man

man of Persia, hauinge slayne bys Soueraygne lord Artabanus, and translated bys kyngdome vnto the Persians, doth nowe enterpryse, in contempnyng the Romayne State, to prouoke vs to battayle: inuadyng at this present, and wastynge oure Provinces. I endeoured at the fyrste to reduce hym by gentle letters, from his vnfaceable greduines, and exhorted hym, not to couepte that was not his owne. But he, beinge puffed by with Barbarous insolence, wyl not holde hym selfe within his owne boundes, but chalengerth vs vnto Battayle. Let vs not therfore trie in the thyng, or deferre the matter. But you which are here present, of the auncient sorte of Souldyours, cause hym to knowe the manifolde victories, whyche you haue obtained, vnder the gouernment, and leading of Seuerus, and my father Antonine. And you which are yong men, seeke and couepte (I say) this praise, and gloire: whereby all men maye perceaue, that you knowe, not onely, howe to lyue in peace quietlye, and obserue it reuerentlye, but also when nede requireth, to fyght valiauntly. Touchyng the Barbarous people, as it is theyr blage, to pursue behementlye, all suche as at the fyrst see, and recule, euen so doo theym selues toune theyr backs, vnto those whyche manfullye persist in the fyght. For they loke not for any victorie in fyghtyng a playne Battayle, but blynge Aquaspons, and Rodes, accompte them selues Conquerours, of all they can gette by steeleth and robberye. But we, on the contrarie parte, haue all thynges decked meete for the warres, wherewith, we haue learned to ouerthrowe, and vanquish them.

When Alexander hadde spoken these wordes, the men of armes receaued hym ioyfullie shoutyng, and shewyng theym selues readye, to goe wth good wylles into the warre. Then he distributed a greate summe of money amonges theym, and commaunded them, to prepare them selues to the iourney. Amonge after, he made the lyke Oration in the Senate house, and appoynted the daye of his departure.

The

The de-
parture
of Alexan-
der fro
Rome.

The whiche beyng comme, after he had (accordynge to the auncient vsage) synished hys sacrifice, he departed (the Senate, and all the Romaine people conueyng hym out of Rome: vpon the which he looked backe wyth wepyng eyes. Neyther was there anye of the common people, whiche watered not hys plantes, in the beholdynge of hys departure. For all the multitude was desyrous of hym, because he was broughte vp amonges them, and had gouerned thempire, verie many peares, wyth muche modestye.

When he was departed, he vsed dyligent speede in his iourney, visited the Illirian people, & men of war, encreased hys power euery where, & wet vnto Antioche. In that Citie, he prepared all suche necessaries, as were expedient for the warres. And caused hys Souldiours to exercise them selues in feates of armes. Him selfe prouided wyth muche dylgence, weapons and harnesse for the same.

It semed then good vnto hym, to proue by another Ambassade, whether the Persian kynge, woulde condescende vnto peace, and vnitie. For beyng hym selfe presente, he lytle doubted, eyther to persuaade Artaxerres, as he woulde, or at least wyle put hym in feare, wyth menaces. But the barbarous kynge, dismissed the Romaine Oratours home agayne, wythout any thyng concluded. And in theyr companye sent fourtye of the goodlyest men of stature, in hys armye: who were gorgeously apparelled, in ryche robes adorned wyth gold, rode vpon great Coursers, and carryed great Bowes in theyr handes, thynkynge to abasse the Romaines wyth the syghte of theyr talnes, and sumptuous rayment. The effect of theyr Ambassade was this.

The Am-
bassade
of Artax-
erres.

Ionia.

Caria.

The Ae-

gean Sea.

Pontus.

The great kyng Artaxerres, commaunded the Romaines w theyr Emperour, to depart out of Syria, & al that part of Asia, which is situate ouer against Europe: & suffer the Persians, to raygne, & haue dominion, as farre as Ionia, and Caria, and all suche landes as the Aegean Sea, and Pontus doo enuiron.

When these fourtye Ambassadors had declared their message,

message, Alexander commaunded them, to be apprehended, toke from them al their sumptuous apparail, and set them into Phrygia, where he allotted vnto the certayne Villages, and fieldes to tyll, and enhabit, beyng satisfied wyth this punishmente of exyle, from their natie Countrey. For he rekened it very cruel, and nothing agreable to manhood, to put the to death, for therewith theyr Masters commaundemente, not beyng taken in battayle.

When thiese thynges were thus ended, and whyles Alexander was busied in preparacion of Bridges to passe ouer the Ryuers, and to leade the Romaine Armye into the confynes of the Barbariens, there reuolted, and fledde fro hym, many Egyptian Souldiours, and in Siria also, dyuerse Commocions, beganne to kyndle agaynst hys gouernemente. But the same were furthewith appeased, and the Rebelles taken, and put to deathe. Then Alexander sente certayne armyes of Souldiours, into the nigh Regiones, that thereby the inuasions of y Warbarouse people, myghte more easlye be restrayned.

All whiche thynges, beyng thus sette in ordre, and as greate an armye leuyed, as he thoughte, would be equall of power, vnto hys enemyes Hoste, he deuyded them, by hys friendes counsaile, into thre sundrye armyes. Of the whiche, one he commaunded to marche towardes the North, throughe Armenia, whiche was reputed frendely vnto the Romaines, and to inuade the borders of the Medians. An other army he sent towardes the North also, commaunding them, to passe by those feldestes of the Barbariens, where Tigris, and Euphrates, are receyued, into greate Marshes, & Woodes, and thereby it is vncertaine where they ende. The thyrde parte, hym selfe promysed to lede betwene bothe the other Armyes, agaynst the Barbariens. Thynkynge by that meannes to oppresse them sodeynly, wyth dyuerse inuasions, when they were vnrady, and looked for no suche chaunce. He supposed, also that the Persian power, shoulde throughe those dyuerse encoûtres wyth the

The Ar-
mye of
Alexander
deuid-
ed into
three par-
tes.
Arme-
nia.
Medians
Tigris.
Euphra-
tes.

The historie of Herodian

Romaynes, on euery syde, be dyspersed abroade, were more saynte, and entre into battayle, wythoute order. For the Barbariens, be not anye mercenarye Souldyours, as the Romaynes are accustomed, neyther haue they anye armye in ppyched Campe, where they myghte exercise theym selues, in seates of warres. But the holt multitude of men, yea often tymes of women also, doe assemble together, at the kynges commaunde, mente. The whyche multitude, after the warre fynished, are dysmyssed home agayne, to theyr ppyuate habytacions, carpenge wyth theym, suche bootye of the battayle, as euery one of theim, for his parte, canne gette by theste. Thei occuppe Bowes, and Horses, not onely in battayle, (as the Romaynes are wonte) but they are euen from theyr chyldhoode, brought vp togythers, traded wyth hunting, and bearynge alwayes theyr quyuers of arrowes wyth them. Thei neuer lyghte from theyr Horses, whether thei syghte in Battayle, or hunte wylde beastes.

But this Polycpe of Alexander, albeit at the fyrste, it seemed, wythoute controuersye, to be the beste, yet was it fourthewyth, by fortune, made destitute of good successe. For the armye, that was commaunded to marche by Armenia, (haupnge wyth greate payne, and difficultye, (althoughe the sommer season, caused theyr iorney, to be meatelys tollerable) passed the Sharpe mountaynes, and cragggye rockes) entred into Media, and there burnt the vilages, and dyaue away great bootyes, of one thing, and other.

When relacion hereof, was made to the Persyan kyng, he came to rescue the Countrey, wyth as greate a power, as he coulde leue. But he coulde not dypue away the Romaynes from thence, for that the same cragggye Countrey, ministred sure looting, and easye passage, vnto the Romayne footemen. And

the

The syxte boke

Fol. lxxi.

the Barbozouse hozsemen, throughe the stepenes, of the Sharpe rocke Mountaynes, hadde a more breasy trauayle, and laboriouse iorneye. There, was it declared, vnto the Persian kyng, that an other armye of the Romayns, was entred, into suche borders of the Parthians, as extended towarde the orient. Wherefore, fearynge lesse the Romaynes, after they hadde Conquered the Parthians, woulde invade Persia also, he leste as greate a Garryson beyonde hym, as seemed sufficiente, for the defence of Media, and hym selfe, wyth thole Armye made speedye haste into thorientall coastes.

The Romayne Armye, marched forwarde verye slowelye, for that no manne respysted theim. Thynkyng, that Alexander wyth the thyrde parte of theim, (wherein were the chyefest mienne of warre) was alreadye entred, into the myddes of the Barbariens. And therefore they rested them selues: iudgyng, that it was not beste, to make any greate haste, seynge they were now in safetie, and knewe the place, wherein they shoulde altogether meete, wyth theyr bootye, and Prysoners.

But Alexander deceaued theim. For he neyther came hym selfe, nor broughte anye Armye for ward. Doubtfull it is, whether he so slacked, throughe feare of puttyng his lyfe in hysard, in defence of his Armye. Or whether his doother deteyned hym at home, throughe womanly fearefulnesse, and ouer muche loue of her Sonne.

For, in deade, he blemished, and blunted, all his noble, and valyaunte courage, in perswadyng hym, rather to sende other furrth to the warres, then stande hym selfe in battayle. The whyche thynge dyde vtyllye betraye the Romayne Armye, that was entered into the Barbarous Regyons. For the Persian kyng dyd meete, and leste vpon theim, vnto adye, and lookynge for no

Al. y.

suche

suche chaunce, wyth hys hole power, and enclosynge theim, as it were, in a nette, dyd vtterlye dyscomfyte, and ouerthrowe, euerye personne of theim, beinge fewe in number, & not able to respyte, so great an Hoste of theyr enemyes. Neuerthelesse, at the fyrste thei defended stoutly, with their Targettes, and weapons, the naked places of theyr bodyes, from the violent shot of arrowes: Accomptynge them selues happilye dealte wyth all, yf wythoute anye playne battayle, they myghte safely escape, from damage. But when thei had for a lytle space, enclosed theim selues wyth theyr Targettes, and were assaulted lyke vnto a walled Cytie, and slayne on euery parte, hauninge vnto the ende valyauntly respyed, they were murdered downe ryghte.

The Romaynes
vanquished
Hed,

This was a meruelous calamitie, vnto the Romayns, the lyke whereof, can be in no age remembered, for thei had nowe losse a greate armye, worthy, eyther for Loyalte, or strengthe, to be compared, vnto anye auncient Hoste, before passed. But the wysshed successe of thiese affayres, enhaunted the mynds of the Persyan kynge, wyth hope of greater enterpryses.

Whereof when Alexander heard (beynge at that tyme, verie sore sycke, eyther throughe persuenes of mynde, or els thintemperatnes of the ayre) he toke it verie greuoulye, and thole armye, wared wonderfull wrothe, agaynst the Emperoure. For thei sayde, that theyr Companions, were betrayde by hym, throughe hys lpenge, & not performente of promysse. Then Alexander, beynge impaciente of hys dysease, and the heate of the ayre, (thole armye also, vexed wyth sykenes, and especiallye the Illyrians, (who before accustomed vnto moyste, & coude ayre, & then feading more largelie) fell throughe sykenes, into danger of deathe), determyned to retourne vnto Antioche: whyther he caused hys Souldiours also to come, verie fewe in numbze remainynge, for that the mooste parte of theim, were pershed, throughe the Harpenes of the Wynter, and Mountaynes.

The

The bandes, whiche were attendaunt vpon hys personne, hym selfe ledde backe vnto Antioche, hauninge losse manye of them also. Wherefore, thys matter broughte muche sorowe vnto the armye, and greate dishonour vnto Alexander, Fortune hauninge decaued hym in all places, and tourned hys entent to none effecte. For a meruaylous numbze of those .iii. armies (so perdye, had he deuided them) were destroyed by diuers calamities, as sykenes, battayle, and colde. When Alexander was come vnto Antioche, he recovered health, refreshed wyth the temperat ayre there, and aboundaunce of water, after the burnynge heate of Mesopotamia, refreshed also hys Souldiours, comfortynge theyr sorowe, wyth geuyng theim money, (whiche he reckened to be the principall meane, to winne theyr heartes) renewed hys armye, and repayred the same wyth freshe Souldiours throughtout, as though he woulde ones moze leade them agaynst the Persyans, yf they proceeded to be troublesome, and desisted not from their iniuries.

But then was it declared vnto hym, that the Persyan kynge, hadde dysmyssed all hys Souldiours home to theyr habytacions. For althoughe the Barbariens, seemed to be the Superyours in Battayle, yet throughe often, and sundrye Battayles, foughte in Media, and Parthia, a great parte of them were slayne, the rest whiche remainned, were eyther empayred wyth dysseases, or elles in Skymishes sore wounded. Neyther were the Romaynes slowlye overcome, but them selues were many times noysome vnto theyr enemyes: beynge by none other meane vanquished, then for that they were, fewer in numbze, entrapped.

For when almoste lyke numbze, was on bothe sydes slayne, the rest of the Barbariens, not in strength and prowesse, but onelye in multitude, seemed to be the better. Whereof, this is sufficient profe, that the Barbariens, in .iii. or .iiii. yerres after, fell not againe vnto armes. The whiche when Alexander vnderstode, he made hys abode styli at Antioche. And being

Al.iii.

from

The Armye
warred
wroth
wyth
Alexander

from thence forwarde, more merye, & liberal, & forget-
tyng the care of the warres, gaue him selfe to the vo-
luptuous pleasures of the same Cytie. But whyles he
thought, that the Barbarians would fro thence furth,
remayne quiet, or at the leaste wyse, it woulde be a
longe tyme, before they coulde assemble againe their
power, vneasy to bring together, after they were once
seperated, for that they were rude, and out of order, &
rather a multitude of rural people, then an armie, ha-
uing onely as much vitayle, as euery man byngeth
for his present necessitie, fro his house: vnwilling also,
to depart fro theyr wyues, children, & habitacios, loo-
furthwith came messengers & letters vnto him, from
the Rulers of Illiria, the which troubled hym wonder-
fully, & cast him into great thought, and perplexitie of
mynde. For they signified, that the Germanes had
passed ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, were entered
into the boundes of the Romaine Empire, assailed
the armies, which defended the bankes, & made theyr
rodes through the Countrey, by the Cities, & Appla-
ges, with a great power of men. And that thereby the
Illirians, being a nation borderer, and neighbour vnto
Italye, stode in great hardarde and daunger, wher-
fore, it was requisit, that The Emperour should be ther
in hys owne person, and byng all the power he had
wyth hym.

These newes, strake marueylous feare, into Alex-
ander, and doleful sorowe into the Illirian Souldy-
ours. For they perceaued them selues to be afflicted,
wyth two miserable calamities, at one instant: ha-
uing first euil successe in the warres, against the Per-
sians, & after, hearyng that their frendes were slaine
at home, by the Germanes. Wherefore, they greatly
grudged against Alexander, as yf by hys cowardyse,
theyr former affayres, had bene betrayed in Thori-
ent, and that now he protracted his remoue, when as
the Northerne causes, earnestly called for hym. Now
stode Alexander, and hys frendes, in greate doubte of
Italye: the affayres of the Persians and the Germai-
nes, being of vniuersall daunger. For those which inha-
bite

What y
Persians
armie is.

The Ger-
maines
rebell.

bite the Orient, are sequestred wyth great distaunces
of lande, and Sea. And thereby do scarsely heare the
name of Italy. But the Illirian nations, dwellinge
in a smale streyte, and possessing verie lytle grounde,
subiecte to the Romaines, doo onely make seperaci-
on betwene Italye, and Germanye. Wherefore, he cau-
sed hys departure to be proclaimed, agaynst hys wyl,
sayng that necessitie constrained hym therunto.
And hauyng left behynde hym, as many men as sea-
med sufficient, for the tuition of the Romaine limit-
tes, and fortified the Cyties, and Castels, with strong
Garrisons, hym selfe departed speedely agaynst the
Germanes, w the residue of hys hole armie. And ha-
uynge wyth speede ended his iourneye, he pitched his
Campe, vpon the bankes of the Rheyne, & there made
provision, for all necessaries, belongyng to the warre.

First, he made a Bridge of Shippes and Galleyes,
ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, that the Romaines
myghte passe to the other syde, by the same. For those
twoo are counted the greatest Ryuers of the North. Rheyne.
Of the wyich, the one passeth by the Germanes, the Danu-
other, by the Pannonians. And in the Sommer sea- ble.
son, they are nauigable, wyth a large, and depe chan-
nell. In wynter so harde overfrosen, that they are Panno-
ridden vpon, as it were a field. For the fle of the chan- nys.
nell is so stronge, and harde, that it not onely bea-
reth hoofes of horses, and feete of men, but also, they
whyche come to fetch water there, byng not wyth
the, so many Cuppes, or Dailes, as they doo Hatchet-
tes, & Mattoches. And when they haue therewith bro-
ke the fle, they cary the same away, without any bes-
sell, as it were a stone. Suche is the nature of those
ryuers.

Alexander dyd set in Battayle, agaynst the Ger-
manes, manie Mauritanians, and a greate power
of Archers, whyche he had broughte oute of the Ori-
ent, some of theym beyng people called Scythians. Scythi-
ans, the resse Parthyan fugytyues, whome he hadde
allured with money vnto him. For those Souldiours
dyd most displeasure, & damage vnto the Germanes.
Because

The Sci-
tuatiō
of Illiria

Rheyne.
Danu-
ble.

Panno-
ny.

Scythi-
mians.

Bycause the Pauritanians do shoothe theyr arrowes from farre, are quicke, nymble, and swifte to skyppe, to and fro. And beyng all Archers, can easelye strike, the bare heades, of the Germapnes, and theyr greate bodies, as it were an appoynted marke, in a Butte. Often tymes also, they foughte in playne batayle, hande to hande, from whence, the Germapnes, often tymes departed, nothyng Inferiours vnto the Komaynes.

Alexander beyng wyth theise troubles occupied, concluded to sende Oratours vnto them, to entreate of peace, in promysynge them money, and to geue the whatsoener they needed, wyth great aboundaunce of treasure. For the Germapnes, are chieflie greaue of money, and often tymes for the same, doo sell theyr peace to the Komaynes. wherfore Alexander endeoured to bye peace of them, rather then to hasarde the matter, in batayle. But the Komayne Souldiours grudged greatlye, that they wasted theyr tyme in bayne, wythoute occasion of atchieuyng any thyng, whereby they myghte shewe theyr valyaunte corage, whyles Alexander, gaue hym selfe to Cartynge (as they sayde) and voluptuousnes, when it was more expedient to reuenge them selues, vpon the Germapnes, and to punyshe them, for theyr presumptuous audacitye.

There was then in the armie, one Mariminus, of a certayne Village of Thrace, and that the obscurest wyth all, a man halfe Barbarous, whyche in his yowthe, had bene a Shepherde, and after, hys yeares beyng encreased, for the heyghte of hys bodye, and hys myghtye strengthe, was waged for a horseman. Finallye, Fortune, as it were, leadyng hym by the hande, and goyng befoze hym, after he had ascended, by all degrees of offyces, in the warre, he aspired vnto the gouernement of the Armie, and Prouinces. Thys Mariminus therefore, for hys experthe knowledge in warrefare, dyd Alexander ordeyne Gouernour of the yowthe, to exercise them, in the feates of warre, and to make them apte, vnto syghte.

And

And he omittynge no diligence, so behaued hym selfe in that office, that he gayned fauoure, of thole army: not onely, instructynge them, in all suche thinges, as were dayly to be done, but executing hym selfe, syt of all, the deades wyth the presente ble required. So that, he had them, not onely as Scolers, but also Companions of hys prowesse, whom he ioyned vnto hym wyth sundrye gyftes, & all kynde of honour. Wherfore the yonge men, of whom the greateste parte were Pannonians, beyng ioyefull of the valeauntnes of Mariminus, did opely speake against Alexander: sayng that he was yet vnder hys Mootheres aucthoritye, and dyd all thyng after her commaundemente, settynge forwarde the warres verie slowelye, and with much cowardise. Thei repeted ofte within them selues, the greate myshappe, they had receiued in thorieinte throughe his delayes, and reprehended, that he had done nothyng valeauntly agaynst the Germapnes. Wherfore being prone of their nature to chaunge of thinges, greued with so longe contynuaunce of regiment (whereof they receyued lytle lucre) for that all ambition was longe befoze abolished) and assuredlye trustynge that some other Prynce which shoulde attayne vnto the Soueraignitie, without lokyng for it woulde bestowe some more gyftes, and honoure vpon them, thei concluded to murder Alexander, and afterwardes to create Mariminus Emperoure beyng their Companion in armes, and all other exercyses, and by his skyl in warfarre, mosse apte for the warre presently in hande. Wherfore hauing by sundry bandes assembled into the felde, when Mariminus came amoges them to instructe the yonge Souldiours, they clothed hym with purple, and saluted hym as Emperour. Doubtfull it is, wether he were ignoraunte of the dyfte, or els made pryue vnto the matter befoze. At the fyrst he refused it, and reiected the purple. But when he saw the me of armes drawe furth their swordes, threating to kyll him, wishing rather the dauger to come, then the peryll presente, he toke the honoure vpon hym: protestynge, that althoughe the same fortune

W. l.

tune

Mariminus had been a Shepherd

tune, were erſte by dreames, and viſions, ſheſwed vnto him, yet was he nowe vnwillingly enforced by the to receiue it, onely becauſe he would obey their myn- des. Then he wylled them, to appoynte all thyn- ges as they would them ſelues, and taking their wea- pons, in preuenting the rumoz of this matter, got ſlea Alexander, who was ignoraunt of all that was done, that thereby his Souldiours, & the Garde of hys per- ſon, beyng with the ſodeyne chaunce diſmaied, ſhoulde either willingly aſſent vnto them, or els beyng vntrea- dy, & loſing for no ſuche happe, ſhoulde mangre theyr heades, be brought in ſubiectiō. Then after he had en- flamed their good willes towardes him, in dublynge their wages, and promiſyng to geue them greates re- wardes, & to pardon all their punyſhmentes, he ledde them all vnto Alexanders Paulyō, incontineſly, for that it was not farre diſtant frō thence. When theſe thinges were declared vnto Alexander, he was great- ly diſmaied wth the noueltye thereof. So that he ran out of his Tent, as a mad man, weeping, & trēbling, now calling Mariminus deſloyall, and periured per- ſon, with reckening of the benefytes, which him ſelfe had beſtowed vpon him: and then, accuſing the ponge Souldiours, which neglecting their othe, would en- terpyce ſo perniciouſly, that facinorouſe facte. And ſynally, he offered to giue them what thei woulde de- ſyre, and amende ſuche thinges as were amiſſe. Then the Souldiours which apartayned to the Garde of hys perſon, making ioyfull acclamaciōs vnto him, promiſed to defende him, with all their might and po- wer. When the night was oncs paſſed, and the daye began to dawne, certaine of the Souldiours, brought worde vnto him, that Mariminus was at hande, for that they myght ſee the duſte rayſed, and heare the noyſe of a greate multitude not farre of. Wherefore Alexander came agayne into the ſielde, & called togy- thers his Souldiours, beſeaching them to ayde, and defende him, whome them ſelues had brought by, and during whoſe raigne, by the ſpace of. xiiii. yeres, they had liued without diſcention. Then hauynge moued them

them all with compaſſion, he willed them to arme them ſelfes, & ſtande in ordze of batayle, to reſyſt their enemies. But the Souldiours (although thei had be- fore promiſed ayde vnto their Prince) dyd not wſtan- dyng ſhrinke away, by litle, and litle. Some of theim required the Captaine of the Garde, & other of Alexan- ders frendes to be put to deathe: alledginge that they were the occaſion of this Commociō. Other of them accuſed hys Moother, for that ſhe was a coueteous woman: who in heaping, and hording of money, and thzoughe her pynchyng, ſparynge, and greedy kea- ping, from the Souldiours, had brought Alexander into dyſdayne wyth them all. Thus ſtode they tal- kyng, and moued not as yet. But as ſoone as tharmy of Mariminus was in ſyghte, and after he had enco- raged them, to forſake a fylthy woman, and a weake ponge man, whiche lyued as yet vnder his Moothers commaundemente, and ioyne them ſelues vnto a ſtronge, and valcaunte man, theyr companion in Ar- mies, and exerceyſed conſynually wyth them, in ſeates of warre, furthwith, thei all together reuoluted frō Alexander, and with one aſſente ſaluted Mariminus as Emperour. Then Alexander fledde backe agayne into his Paullion, trembling, and halfe beſydes hym ſelfe, and embrasyng his Moother, and (as it is repo- red) blamyng her for that he ſuffered this calamity, for her ſake, he abode there, loſing for the murderer.

Now Mariminus, after he was created Emperour by thole Armye, gaue in charge to the Tribune, and Capitaines, the murderinge of Alexander wyth hys Aleran- Moother, and all other whych ſhould make anye re- der & hys ſyſtaunce. Thei furthwith enterig by vyolence into Moother the Paullion, ſlew both Alexander, and his Moother, wth theyr frendes, and euerye noble man, excepte a frendes ſewe, whych a litle before had made hyſte for theim ſayne. ſelues by fleeing away, and were hyd in corners. All the which, being ſhortly after apprehended, Marimi- nus dyd put to death. This ende of lyfe had Alexan- der, with hys Moother, when he hadde by the ſpace of. xiiii. yeres reigned, withoute any complainte of the Citizens, yea with out any bloodſhead cyther.

The Historie of Herodian

For detestting crueltie, and murder he permitted no man to suffer, withoute he were by iudgemente condemned, so muche was he addicted to gentle beneuolence. So that yf the coueyteous, and greadye Moother, had not with fylthy couetise defamed her Sone, there coulde nothyng haue bene wantynge, or wished for, in hys gouernement of Thempyre.

The Argumente of the seuenth Booke of Herod- dyan.



De Begynninge of the seuenth Booke maketh mencion of Mariminus Crueltie, which passed ouer, and made warre vpon the Germanes. And at his returne to Rome, oppzessed the people, wyth greuous exaccions, and commytted much sacrilege, whiche caused muche hurley burley amonges the people. How the nacion of Aphrique rebelled, and made Gordianus Emperoure, who was vanquysht by Capellianus, Gouernour of Mauritania. And after Gordianus deathe, howe the Senate elected Maximus, and Albinus, and with them yonge Gordianus. The audacitie of Gallianus foloweth, and the myschiese that ensued thereupon.

(?) (?)
(?) (?)
(?) (?)

The seuenth booke of the Hystorie of Herod- dyan.



We haue in the former booke, at length declared, after what sort, Alexander behaued himselfe, durynge the. xliii. yeres of his raygne. After whose death, Maximinus, hauynge obtayned the Type, and regimente, of the Empryre, altered the estate of all thynges, and abused verie cruellie, hys obtayned Power, so that frome a Gentle Gouernemente, he endeouored to chaunge it vnto cruell tyrannye. For perceyuyng him selfe to be odious vnto all men, bycause he fyrste of all other, had aspyred vnto that Fortune, fro a base estate, besydes that, beyng aswell Barbarous of maners, as by nature greadye of bloudshed, he endeouored chiefely, to establishe the Empryre vnto hym, through crueltie, fearynge least he should be had in contempte of the Senate, and all other Romaines, whyles not hys present Fortune, but the obscurenes of hys byrthe, was specially noted in hym. For it was openly knowen vnto all men, that he had been a shepherde in the Mountaynes of Thrace, and receaued amonges the symple, and base Souldyours of that region, for the greatnes, and strengthe of hys bodye, and nowe exalted vnto the Romaine Empryre, Fortune (as I myghte saye) leadynge hym by the hande.

Wherefore, fyrste of all, he rooted oute of the Senate house, all the frendes and Councelours of Alexander, of the whyche some he dimitted to Rome, other some he depzied of theyr offyces, accusynge their former administration therein. This dyd he, to the entente he myghte be alone, in the armie, hauynge no man of the nobilitie nyghe hym, but withoute the reuerence of anye such, as in a strong fortresse, exercised hys tyranny. Then dyd he expell oute of the Imperiall

The ty-
ranny of
Maximi-
nus.

W.iii.

periall

perial palatce, al the Seruauntes of Alexander, whom he had by so many yeares retayned in seruice, and did put some of them to death, fearing treason, because he perceaued them dolefully to lament the death of Alexander. But his tyranny was moze augmented, thorough the opening of a certayne conspiracie agaynst hym, wherein many of the Captaynes, & the whole Senate, were confedered.

There was a certayne man of the nobilitie, which Magnus had been Consul, named Magnus. The same was accused vnto Maximinus, that he had intended treason agaynst him, & perswaded the Souldiours, to translate the Emperre vnto him. Thys counsaile was supposed to be suche. Maximinus had made a Brydge ouer the ryuer, to passe agaynst the Germanys, haauyng a gre- by appetite (after he had gotte the Emperre) vnto warlike affayres. For being erected vnto the Emperre, through the huge quantitie of his bodie, his strengith, and skill in warfare, he endeouored with open deades, to confirme y same opinion of the souldiours, to proue, thereby, that the feare, cowardise, and slouth of Alexander, in warlike exercises, was iustly by him condemned. Wherefore, he omitted nothyng that appertayned to the exercise of the men of warre. And beyng hym selfe daylye in armes, dyd therewith greatlye prouoke the courage of the Souldiours.

After the aforesayde Brydge was synnyed, he determined, to passe ouer into Germanyne. But then it was reported, that Magnus had entiled a great number of Souldiours, who excelled the other in prowes, especially of those, vnto whō the custodie of the Brydge was committed, that allone as Maximinus were passed vnto the other syde of the riuer, they should throw downe the bridge, exclude him from all retourne, and thereby betray him vnto the Germans. For y depth, and breadth of the ryuer was suche, that it seemed impossible for hym to gette ouer agayne, especiallre, because there was no kynde of vessel, on the further shore. Suche was the rumor of thys enterpryse. But vncertayne it is, whether the same were trulye reported

ported, or els forged of a purpose. For it is hard, to giue a resolute Iudgemente therein, bycause that wythoute anye trespall, aunswere, or sentence, as manye as were onelye suspected, were putte vnto deathe.

At the same time, there began a great commotion, of the Astrohenian Souldiours also. For they beyng berue sorrowfull for the deathe of Alexander, and by happe, meetyng wyth one of hys frendes, named Quarcinus (who a lytle before hadde been dimitted by Maximinus from the Campe) tooke hym agaynst hys wyll, when he loked for no suche matter, elected hym to theyr Captayne, clothed hym wyth Purple, carped the fyre before hym, and so adozned wyth perniciousse honours, exalted hym vnto the dygnitie of Emperoure.

The whyche man, shortlye after, sleapyng in hys Pavilion, was by one of hys owne Companions, and (as it is supposed) hys frende, trayterously murdered. The same was named Macedonius, whyche had been before, Ruler of the Astrohenians, and at that present, was fyrste Authour vnto them, of reueltinge from Maximinus. And, althoughe there were no cause of grudge betwene him, and Quarcinus, yet dyd he thus murder hym, whome hym selfe had fyrste compelled to become Emperour.

Then thynkyng to shewe Maximinus some great pleasure, he caried vnto hym the head of Quarcinus. But Maximinus, albeit he were glad of that facte, for that hys enemye was rydde oute of the waye, yet dyd he putte vnto extream deathe thys Macedonius, (whyche loked after some greate rewarde, and hoped to receaue great thankes for hys trauayle) because he was Authour of the rebellion, and murderer of one, whyche hym selfe had induced, maugre hys head vnto that mischief, and had been false vnto the man, whyche had mosse affyaunce in hym.

These causes therfore, dyd exasperate the mynde of Maximinus, and kyndled hys furye, beyng alreadye of hys owne nature, ouer prone vnto crueltye.

He was besydes, horrible of visage, & of so huge, and myghty stature, that none of the most valiaunt Grekes, or mooste warlyke Barbariens myghte be compared vnto hym.

When these thynges were thus set in order, he gathered together the whole Armye, passed wythoute feare ouer the Brydge, and made Battayle vpon the Germaines. There folowed hym a wonderfull number of men, almoste all the power of the Barbariens, and wyth theym verpe manye Mauritanian Slyn- gers, and Archers. There folowed hym besydes, the Afrohenians, and Armenians, the one nacion beinge subiecte vnto the Romaynes, the other associ- ated in frendshyppe wyth them, they were accompa- nyed wyth as manye Parthians, as beyng hysed or fugityues, from theyr natyue countrey, or els taken in the warres, serued the Romaynes.

This multytude of people, was fyrste leuyed by Alexander, & then augmēted, and exercised, by Marimi- nus. The Slynkers, and Archers, seamed verpe pro- fytable in the warre agaynst the Germaines, by- cause they coude easelye stryke theyr enemyes vni- uerses, and recule theym selues furthelwyth, into sure defence.

Mariminus beyng entred wythin hys ene- mies lande, and fyndyng no man to resist hym (for all the Germaines were fledde) pyllled and foraged the countrey (the Corne beyng then ripe) and permit- ted the Souldyours to burne, and destroye, all the Villages. And in deade, the Townes and houses there, are verpe muche subiecte to daunger of fyre.

For amonges the Germaines, the Wyldynge wyth Stone, and Tyle, is verpe rare and scarce.

But wyth great peeces of Tymber set in the earthe, and Joyned together in thycke woodes, they make (as it were) tabernacles. Mariminus then goynge forwardes, in wastynge the Countrey, sackynge the corne, and distributyng the Cattell, whyche was taken amonges the Souldyours, founde not as yet, anye of hys enemyes. For they had abandoned all the

The Ger-
maines
houses.

fielde

felde, playne, Countrey, and all places, destitute of trees, and hydde them selues couertly in the woodes, and marishes, that they myght there fyght, and with sodayne assautes, invade their enemyes: because the thickenesse, and nygh growing togither of the trees, seemed to become a great impediment vnto the arro- wes, and dartes, of theyr enemyes. And they thought, that the depth of their marishes, and Pooles, would be daungerous vnto the Romaynes, for that they were ignoraunte of the passages, and Countrey. But vnto them selues, verpe easye, and profytable, because they wading daily throug them, by to the knees, perfect- ly knewe, whiche were the passable foordes, & whiche vnpssible to get ouer. And truly, the Germaines are verpe cunnynge in swymming, as men, which one- ly swymme, and bathe them selues in Ryuers. In thesse places therfore, was the battayle begon, where fyrste of all the Romayne Emperour enterpylled the conflycte verpe valiantly. For when they were come vnto a greete, & broade Marye, within the which, the Germaines had retyred them selues, the Romay- nes, beinge afearde to pursue their enemyes, Mar- minus fyrste entered vpon a great Courser, into the Marye (wher his horse soudered to y belye) & slewe with great māhode, many of the Barbarous people, whyche resysted. Wherefore the respyde of tharmpe, beyng pricked wyth shame, yf they shoulde forsake their Emperour, nowe fyghtyng for them, aduen- tured them selues also into the Marye. And then were there slayne, many of eyther parte, but so, that there was no Barbarien leste a lyue, the Romayne Emperour fyghtyng mooste valyauntly. Whereby the Marye beyng fylled wyth deade carcasses, and the lake beyng myngled wyth bloode, caused it to seame, that this foote Battayle was fought wyth shippes vpon the water.

This victory, wyth other hys skoute, and myghte factes, he not onely spgnified vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, by letters, but also beyng printed in a great Table, caused it to be published before the

¶. i.

Coorde,

Coorse, that the Romaynes myghte not onely heare of hys valyaunte deades, but also haue theim perfectly exprested before theyr eyes.

The same Table, with the reste of hys honours, the Senate afterwarde pulldowne, and abolished.

There were manye other skymythes, and batayles foughten, wherein hym selfe, throughte hys fynde gyvinge the ousette, and manfull fyghtynge) gate ever the price, and renowne. Then he retourned, against the wynter season, into Pannon, wyth manye prisoners, and greate bootye of Catayle. And wynter

Sirmiu.

rynge wythin the Cytie of Sirmium, (whiche is the greatest Cytie of that Countrey) he prepared all necessaries, for hys vyage, agaynst the spynginge time: threathynge, wholy to subdue all the Barbarouse nations of the Sermaynes, euē to the Ocean. The whiche thing, it seemed, he woulde assuredly bynge to passe, such a one was he, in the affaires of warrefare, and shuld haue obtayned a wonderfull gloze throug

The erac
tions of
Marimi
nus.

hys factes, yf he hadde not bene more outragiouslye to hys owne subiectes, then to hys enemyes. But to what purpose, are the Barbarians slaine, yf much more murder, be committed wythin the Cytie selfe of Rome, and the nations subiecte thereunto: or what auayleth it to haue plentye of Captiues, and prayes of beastes, yf by hys conquestes, and fortune, the Romaynes theim selues, be dyspoyled of all they haue.

For, not onely freely byberte, but also entpyng, was giue, vnto pernicious promoters, to accuse, and crye cuniente wyth fraude, whome they would. Yea, and to renewe (yf neade were) faultes before done, by mens Auncellours, some of them vnknewen, and vnyharde of, but yll that present instant. Neyther was there any man detected of anye offence, but the same was furthwyth condemned, and all his goodes confiscated. Whereby, a man myghte daylye see, dyuerse whiche before were wonderfull ryche, and welthy) nowe begge theyr breade: So greate was the courtysie of hys Tyrannye, whyles he distributed money

money continually, amonges the menne of warre. His eares besydes were open vnto all complayntes, so that he had no regard, to any mans age, or dignitie.

For manye Capytaines of armyes, Gouernours of prouinces, wyth dyuerse that hadde bene Counsullers, and for theyr merites triumphed, being ones for anye sonde trifle, or lyghte cause accused, he caused furthwyth to be apprehended: and puttyngs theim in Charottes alone, wythout any Seruaunte attendynge bypon theim, compelled theim, to come oute of the Caste, and Welste (yf the chaunce so happened) and oute of the Southe also, vnto Pannon, where hym selfe sojourned. And there spoylyngs theim of all theyr substaunce, and entreatynge theim wyth moste shamefull sleanders, he afflicted theym wyth death, or banishment. But as longe, as one, or two, suffered thiese damages, and the sayde calamity passed not theyr lynage, the common people, lytle regarded it. For the aduerse chaunces of Ryche, and welthy menne, were not onely of the Commons, neglected, but also manye of theim, of a frowarde mynde, and peruerse wyll, in despyte of the Ryche men, were verie gladd wyth the same theyr myseryes.

But after that Mariminus, hadde thus broughte The sa
vnto extreme pauertrye, the samplies of many noble, crileges
and famous menne, rekenynge theim of no value, of Mar
and but tryfles towardes the satysfienge of hys out
ragious couetousnes, he tourned hys mynde vnto
the Robberye, and spoylyngs, of the common Treas
soure.

For what so euer money hadde bene before layde vp, for the Common prouysson of Corne, or what so euer Ryches remayned, to be distributed amonges the people, wyth all suche Treasoure as serued to the deckynge of the Theaters, and gorgeous settynge furthe of festiuall Dompes, and playes, the same euerye iote, he adiudged to hym selfe.

Besides

E.g.

Besides that, the gyftes of all the Temples, the Statues, and honours, of all the Goddes, and famous men, wth what so euer publycke worke, Cynell ornaments, or matter, whiche seemed conuenient to make money of, were put to the fyre. Whiche thing dyd chieflie gnaue, and bere the hartes of the people, & caused, as it were, a common mourning, saying, that wthoute warre, or battayle, the Cytie was lyke to be assaulted, & taken, so that many of the people auentured to resyste hym, and to defende the Temples, wthynge rather to be slayne before thau^ltars of the immortall Goddes, then to see theyr Cytie destroyed. And hereby chieflie, did the myndes of the Common people, beginne to grudge against him, th^{rough}oute all the Cyties of Thempyre. Neyther were the Souldiours the selues very glad with it, for that theyr neyghbours, and kynnsfolke rebuked them, and imputed to theyr faulte, that Mariminus dyd thus behaue hym selfe. Thiese enormities, therefore, beyng of no small importaunce, dyd prouoke the people to hatred, and rebellio. But hither vnto thei medled not, saue onely wth wordes, callynge vpon the Goddes, whome Mariminus had offended, for that there was none durste take vpon hym, to reuenge the cause: vntyll that after thre yerres eande of hys Reygne, vpon a lyghte occasyon (as the assayes of Tyrantes, are waueringe, and subiecte to chaunge) the Africans, fyrste enterprysed to fall to Armes, and rebellyon, and this was the cause. There was a certaine Liuctenaunt in Carthage, who wanted nothynge, that appertayned to extreme surfe, and outrageous Tyranny. The same crepte into his Princes fauour, by condepnynge of men, & extorting of money. For Mariminus loued the most of al other, who he knew to be of his own secte & factio. So y, whoso euer therfore had the charge of Theperors treasour, whether they were good me (which very sealdome happened) or deposed fro their office, or elles feared wth the present peryll, beyng kylfull of hys insatiable auarice dyd (althoughe vnwillingly) folow, & accompany y rest.

This

Rebel's
& better
Curses a
gainst
Marimi-
nus.

The Go-
uernour
of Affri-
que.

This aforesaid Liuctenaunte of Affryca, ha-
uynge violentlye comyncted, manye greate enormi-
ties, dyd also compasse, to eracte money furthwth,
of certayne noble, and ryche yonge men (whome he
had by fraude circumuented wth condemnation)
and to depyue the of all theyr Patrimonye, & ryches,
whiche theyr Auncellours had left them. Wth whiche
thynge, the yonge men beyng incensed, dyd in deade
promyse to paye the same, demaundayng thre dayes
respyte, for the payment.

And in the meane whyle, conspyryng together,
as manye as had alreadye suffered, or feared hereaf-
ter to suffer affliction, commaunded the yonge men
theyr seruautes, to come from theyr Villages, and
Farmes, with Clubbes, and Ares, vnto them.
They executynge theyr Maisters commaundemen-
tes, came all together before daye lyghte, into the Cy-
tie, hydynge vnder theyr Garmentes, such weapons,
as in that sodayne tumulte, they had gotten.

There was assembled, a wonderfull greate num-
ber of men. For in Affrica (beyng it selfe greatlye re-
plenished wth people) there were at that tyme, ma-
nye Labourers, and Husbände men allo. After the
daye appeared the yonge men, commaunded theyr ser-
uautes to wayte neare vpon them, as thoughe they
were some of the Towne people, and not to shewe
theyr weapons, or begynne anye violence, vntyl they
sawe the menne of Armes, or elles of the common
people, assaulte theym to reuenge the facte, whiche
they woulde shortlye comyncte. They theym sel-
ues, hydynge theyr Daggers in theyr bosomes, went
into the Liuctenautes house, saynyng they woulde
speake wth hym, touchynge the payment of the mo-
ney, and furthwth sodeynlye there stewe hym, when
he suspected no suche casualtye.

Then hys Souldiours, drewe furthe theyr swo-
des, and endeouored to reuenge the murder. But the
Husbändemen, and Labozers, ranne immediatlye
to the byckerynge, and there stoutly foughte for their
Maisters, and easelye contrayned all theyr enemyes

¶.iii.

to

The Go-
uernour
of Affrik
slayns.

to turne their backs, & flee. The y enterprise was after this wise atchieved, y pong me, hauing so desperatly set vpon y matter, rekened one only helpe to remaine for them. That is, if thei heaped vpon this late committed mischinous act, a more heinous offence. Wherefore thei determined to associat in the perill vnto them, the gouernour of the Province, & to induce y mindes of the people, vnto rebellio, y whiche thei knew to be wished for, of the al, through y hatred of Maximinus, but as yet prohibited fro it, through feare. Wherefore, in the deape of the night, thei went w all y multitude, to the Proconsuls house. The same was Gordianus, who obtained y office, whe he was. iiii. score yeres old, and had been gouernour of many Prouinces before, and approued in sundry weyghty affaires. And therefore thei thought, that he would, without difficultie, take y rule of the myrry vpon him, as y fynall eande of his former dignities, & that he shoulde be a Prince gratefull vnto y Senate, & people of Rome. For that, besides his noblenes of byrth, he had by diuers honors, as by stepes, ascended vnto the regyment of The myrry.

Gordianus chosen Emperour by the people.

Now it happened, y the very same day that these thinges were in doing, Gordianus remained within his owne house, hauing deferred his busynes vntill another time, & suspended for then the administratio of all thynges. The yonge men wyth their swordes being accompanied w a great number of people, repulsed his Porters, & entred w force into the house, and found him resting him self vpon his bed, where thei throgged about the old mā, clothed him w purple, & saluted him w imperiall honors. But he beinge astonied w the sodayn chaunce, & supposing it to be a deccite, wrought of purpose against him, let him selfe fall to the ground fro his bed, beseeching the, to haue compassio vpon an old mā, whiche had neuer offended the, and to obserue theyr trueth, and allegiaunce, towards their Prince. Then whyles thei thus perseuered, holding their swordes in theyr handes, & whyles Gordianus, partly through feare, partly through ignorance, knewe not what the matter ment, or what was the cause of so sodayn fortune,

tune, one of the yongmen, whiche excelled the reste in nobilitie, & eloquence, hauing commaunded the vnto silence, holding his sword by the hyltes, spake after this sort.

Of twoo perylls, of y which thone is present, & manifest, thother doubtful, & of uncerten eande, thou must this day chose one. That is, either to preserve vs, & thy self, & coceue as good hope, as we already haue, or els without delay, suffer death by our handes. And if thou chose the better, the are there many occasions of good hope. For thou shalt rid out of the way Maximinus, of all the woide abhorred, as a pestiferous plague, of cruell tyrannye, & adde vnto thy life (whiche thou hast hither vnto vertuously led) famous gloze & renowne, obtayninge of the Senate, and people of Rome eternal honour, & perpetual praise. But if thou reiect it, & deny to conspire with vs, we wyll out of hand put the to death: and our selues also (yf neade be) wyll accompany the in dying. For we haue enterprised a greater matter, then that we can be safe without desperation. The minister of tyrannye is dead, and hath receaued condigne punishment for his cruelty, beinge a lytle earste, slayne wyth oure handes. Wherefore, yf thou wyll consent wyth vs, and become partaker of oure perylls, thy selfe shalt obtayne the Emperre. And then the faulte, whiche we haue committed, shall be reputed, more worthye, prayse, then punishment.

Whyles the yonge man spake thesle wordes, the reste of the multitude, beinge vnpacient of staye, or tarynge (seynge all the Cytizens whiche had hearde of the matter, were assembled, together) wyth one accorde, pronounced Gordianus Emperour.

Then he (albeit, he had before refused it, and excused hym selfe by his age, yet beinge of nature ambitious and desirous of gloze) dyd wythoute resistence, take the honour vpon hym: myndynge, rather to enter into the daunger to come, then the perill present. Besides that, he thoughte not good, to refuse it, seynge his age was come to that perfection, but (if the case so required) to dye Emperour of Rome.

wherefore

The wordes of one of y yonge men vnto Gordia.

Gordianus saluted Emperour.

Libia.
Affrikes

Wherefore, incōtinently after this, al Affrique began to rebell, and manye Cyties, pulled downe the honours of Mariminus, and erected Images of Gordianus. And hym they named of theyn selues, African. For those whiche inhabite the Parthe Cōste of Lybia, are called in the Romayne tonge Aphryques.

Elisodunum

Then Gordianus haupnge sojourned . 6. dayes at Elisodunum, in the whiche Cytie, all these thynges were done, and possessynge the name, and apparell of Emperour, remoued vnto Carthage, that in the same Cytie, beynge verie great, and much frequented, all thynges myghte be ordered, as in Rome. For Carthage, in haboundaunce of rycheesse, resorte of people, or greatnesse of compasse, geuynge onely preheminence to Rome, dooth contend wth Alexander in Egypte, for the seconde place. Thither folowed Gordianus, all the pryncypall Pompe, wth all the Souldyours in those partys, and the Cytie yonge men, of tall, & comely stature, like in similitude vnto them at Rome, whiche garde the Emperours person, with Laurell rodde in theyr handes, whereby the Prynces are discerned from priuate persones. There was fyre also, accordynge to the blage, carped before hym, so that Carthage, for a small space, dyd represente the forme and fortune of Rome.

Carthage.

The ryches and bygnesse of Carthage.

Alexander.

From thence, Gordianus sent manye letters, vnto euerye Magistrate of Rome, and to the noble men of the Senate, amonges whome there were verie manye his frendes and alpes.

He wrote besydes, vnto the whole Senate and people of Rome, signifying vnto them, the fauour of the Affrycans towardes hym: and therewithall accusing the crueltye of Mariminus, whiche he perceaued to be detested of al men. Hym selfe vsed al gentlenes, and affabilitie. For he punished wth exyle, all vntrew Pompe, and Accusers, and vnto theym whiche were vnrightrously therefore condemned, he gaue free libertie, to defende theyr owne. Mea, he restored those whiche tofore were banished, to theyr natyue Countreys agayne, & promysed to geue to the Souldyours

dours, more rewarde, and to distribute amonges the people more gyftes, then any man before him had done. He brought to passe also, that Uytalian, & Lord of Uytalia, greate Maister of Mariminus householde, a mā out-ragious and cruell, but moste deare, and welbeloued of Mariminus, was slayne within the Cytie itse of Rome. For suspecting, that that man, in respying of his enterpryses, would with feare cause other alio to turne from hym, he sente the Lyuetenaut of the Province, a skoute yonge mā, stronge of body, of flouryshtynge age, and ready to attempte any peryll for his sake, with certayne Capitaynes, and dyuerse Souldyours in his company: vnto whome he deliuered letters sealed wth two Seales, by the which Themperours vsed to signifie their priuie Counselles, and assayres. Those he commaunded to entre into the Cytie before daye lyghte, and (whyles Uytalian were busied in his accustomed affayres) to go vnto him in to the Chamber, where he was wonte to enquire of the secret thinges, which appertayned to the safegard of his Prince: thewynge hym, that thei had secrete letters vnto him from Mariminus, and woulde, all other set a parte, commune with him, of thinges belonging to the Princes person, in declaring vnto him the Emperours mynde. And then, whyles he were occupied in the loking vpon the Seales, thei shuld murder hym, wth their daggers, hydde in their bosomes of purpose. All whiche enterpryse, was atchpyed as he wished. For before the dauning of the daye (when as he accustomed to come furthe) thei founde Uytalianus aliothe alone, w a fewe onely standinge aboute him) because some were nat as yet come vnto him, some other, after their salutacio done, were departed before it was day light. Wherefore, finding him at leysure, and a fewe standing before the Chamberdore, after thei had declared those thinges which we before spake of) thei were easely let in, & hauig deliuered their letters whyles he diligently regarded the sygnettes thereof, Thei drew out their daggers, & slew him. And then departed out of the Chamber, with their daggers naked in talianus.

Z. i.

theyr

The Historie of Herodian

their handes, every man giuing them place, and way to passe. For thei supposed, it had bene done by Mar-
minus commaundement, for that he was wont often
tymes so to do by them, whome a lytle before, he most
entirely loued. Then thei going through the streete,
which hight Sacia via, shewed furthe the Cypse of
Corbian vnto the people, and deliuered letters from
hym, vnto the Counsillers the selues, and other Ma-
gisstrates of Rome, spredying by rumors abroad, that
Marimyne was already slayne.

The which thing being ones disbulged, immediatly
all the people ranne through the streetes, frō one place,
to an other, lyke men distracted of their right senses.

The vn-
constancy
of the Ro-
mayne
people.
For as the comon people, are in every place, uncon-
stante, & prone to newe chaunges, so are the Romaine
people, chiefly, more loauering, and vnstedfaste, then
all other: being knytted, of a greate, and dyuerse, mul-
titude of straungers.

¶ When were the Images of Marimyne, with the
reste of his honours, furchwith pulled downe. And
the hatred againste hym, before, through feare by-
den, thei did now, after a free libertie gotten, and no
man prohibyting them, powre, and spytte oute. The
Senate also, being often assembled (albeft they had
no certayne reporte of Mariminus estate, yet concei-
uring by the present fortune, the rumour to be true)
did abolysh all his honours, and pronounced Cordi-
anus, & his Sonne, Emperours.

Cordia-
nus & his
son pro-
nounced
Empe-
rours.
Immediatly after that done, all Promoters, eyther
fledde away, or elles were slayne, by those, whom thei
had before offensed. The Soliciters, despydes of Mar-
mines, and suche as late in iudgemente, in the mini-
string of his Tyranny, were by the common people,
drawen through the streetes, and throwen into the
common synkes of the Citie. In this bypasse, there
were many innocentes slayne. For euery leuche persō
entered violently into the house of his creditor, or
aduersarie in the lawe, or of any other, to whome vpon
newer to lyght an occasiō he hated, and ther disposed
him of his goodes, and murdered him. Thus vnder
coloure

The senenth booke. Fol. lxxxiii.

coloure of liberty, and pretence of peace, the very dea-
des of Cyuil warre were comytted, so that there was
slayne with the dinte of a clubbe, Sabinus the Lyce-
tenaunte of the Citie, which endeuoured to appease Sabinus
this busye tumulte. Chiefe thinges dyd the peeple. slayne.

After the Senatours hadde ones entered into thys
peryl, thei dyd, through feare of Marimine, sollycite
in all thei coude, the Prouinces to rebellvone.

¶ Wherefore, ther were Ambassadors chosen of the chie-
fest of the order of Senatours, and Knyghtes, the
whiche were sente vnto the gouernours of the Prin-
ces, with letters, wherein was at length, declared the
mynde of the Senate, and people of Rome, which ex-
hortet the sayde Rulers to haue a specyal regarde to
their natie countrey, to defende the Coozte of Rome,
and perswade the nacions vnder them, to continewe
in their allegiaunce, towarde the Romayne people,
whose dominion ouer them, and auncient bonde of a-
mitie with them, was by their progenitours longe a-
gone, ordeyned. Many of those Gouernours, receaued
the Ambassadors very greatly, and enduced the peo-
ple to reuolte: the which was easely brought to passe,
in so greate hatred was Mariminus had wyth every
man. Thei therefore, hauing oute of hande slayne all
suche Magisstrates amanges them, as were of Mari-
mines parte) did all together turne vnto the Romay-
nes. Per were there a fewe Rulers, which either slew
the Ambassadors, y cam vnto them, or elles sent them
vnder sure custody vnto Marimyne, who with moost
cruel tormentes, dyd put them to deathe. This was
the mynde, this was the wyll, of the Citie of Rome.
The whyche hurley burley, beinge reported vnto
Mariminus, althoughe he were sozowfull wythall,
yet dyd he sayne, that he viterly contempned it, and
the fyrst, and seconde daye, remayned quiete, wythin
hys owne house, consultinge wyth hys secrete frien-
des, aboute the same mater. And althoughe the hole
armye, and people of that Regyon knewe, and
vnderstode, all thys busynesse, and were prone
also

also to remolte, spurred with the boldenes, and newel-
ve of so greate enterpryses, yet had euerie man holde
his peace, taking vpon him to be ignorant of the case
so greatly was Maximinus, feared amonges the, that
nothing was hidde from hym. For he had not onely
herke vnto euery mans wordes, but also, watch, and
pryue, vpon the gesture of their faces, and handes.

The thyrde daye, he caused all the Souldiours, to as-
semble in a playne before the City, and there him selfe
sitting in a highe throne, reherfed oute of a booke, an
oration, his by frendes composed, and perused before,
thus.

The ora-
cion of
Maximi-
nus.

Sarmat-
ians.
Mesapo-
tamie.

I know verily, that I shal declare vnto you, a thing
straunge, & incredible, but (as I my selfe suppose) not
worthy so muche wonder, as laughter. They are not
the Germanyes, so often vanquished, that do moue
warre against you, and your valiauntes, neyther the
Sarmatians, whiche dayly treate wyth vs for peace.
The Persians also, whiche ones wasted Mesopotamia
dothe nowe ware wyse, in quietinge theim selues,
wythin their owne houses: beyng taughte, partely
wyth youre valiaunte prowes in warrefare, partely
wyth the enpryses, whiche I haue atchined: where-
with, they became aquainted, when I had the gover-
naunce of the Armeie, for their passage, ouer the Ry-
uers.

But (lesse I should deceyue you with a thyng moze
woorthye laughter,) the Carthaginenses are become
madde, and wyth an infortunat olde man, whiche do-
reth throughe extremite of age, I doute whether he
were perswaded, or compelled therunto: they do, as it
were, in a stage enterlude, play, and take the Princis-
palitie vpon them. For to what Armeie do they truste,
when as Bergauntes, and Catchepolles, doe supplie
the Proconsulles roume amonges theim: what wea-
pons wyl they beare, seynge they haue none but smale
speares, to hunte wilde beastes withal: And in steade
of warlike exercises, they vse daunsing, & synging of Bal-
lades, & Carrolles. Let not y thinges which are reported
to

Procon-
sul.

to be done wythin the City of Rome. Whiche you
that Italian is sayne, by discryte, howe vnstable the
myndes of the Romanes be, and howe prompt they
corage is, onely to make shoutes, it is manifest vnto
you. If these. ii. or. iii. armed men, they thynke one an-
other forwarde to the danger, in spurnynge one an-
other: and sleinge awaye, euerye man from hys owne
danger, they neglecte the common peryll.

If any man hath reported vnto you, the thynges done
by the Senate, there is no cause why you shoulde
meruaile, that oure continence scanteth ouer harde,
vnto theym, and thereby that the agremente of Cor-
dianus maners, wyth theys, and hys voluptuose
lyfe, is by theym preferred before vs. For amonges
them all, valiauntesse, and graue deades, are coun-
ted austere, and tyrannous, and all dissolute lyfe, is
esteemed gentle, and pleasaunte. They feare therefore
oure gouernaunce, because it is moderate, and labo-
rious, and they reioyse at the name of Cordian,
whose infamie of lyfe is not vnknoen vnto you.

Wherefore, agaynst them, and suche as they are, you
haue to warre. (I Souldiours) yf a man maye, at the
leaste wyse, call it warre. For my mynde geueth me,
and so maye all other thynke, that before we appoche
neare vnto Italye, the greatest parte of theym, wyl
humblie meete vs, wyth Laurell Bowes in theyr
handes, and carryng theyr Chyl dren wyth them, fall
prostrate at oure feete: or elles, beyng stryken wyth
cowardlye feare, runne awaye, leauynge all theyr
goodes behynde theym for me to take, and distribute
amonges you, that you may enioye the same for euer.

When he had thus muche spoken, and enterlaced
hys talke, wyth manie shornefull reproches of
the whole Cytie, and Senate of Rome (threatenyng
them, wyth the gesture of hys handes, and wyth ter-
rible countenaunce, and menacynge them as though
they had been preset) he proclaymed his voyage towar-
des Italye. And then hauinge geuen vnto the Souldy-
ours much money, he sojourned ther for one dai. That
passed, he entred into his iourney, leadyng wyth him

a meruaplaus great armye, and all the Romaine power. There folowed hym also a great number of Germanes, not to be neglected, whome he had eyther by force subdued, or els associated in amitie vnto hym.

He carped besides diuers engens and Instrumentes of warre, with other thynges whiche he had prepared befoze againn the Barbarous nations. Now did he marche slowely because of the wagons, and other necessities for the warre, whiche were carped in hys companye. For seying that iourney happened sodeynly vnto hym, the thynges expedient for the Souldyours were not gathered by anye mans prouision, as it was tofoze accustomed, but they were then hastely as it came to hande, taken and carped. Wherefoze he determined to send befoze, the Pannonian bandes, in whome he had great confidence, whiche also fyrste saluted him for Emperour, and willyngly attempted all perilles for hys sauegarde. Theyse he commaunded to set forwarde, befoze the reste of the heste, and to enter into Italye.

But whyles Mariminus was thus in hys iourney, his affaires had better successe in Carthage, then he loked for. For there was a certayn man named Capellianus, of the order of the Senatours, Liuetenaute of Mauritanie, which is subiect to the Romaines, and of the named Numidia. This nacio was fortified with stronge armies of men, whiche defended it, from the inuasions of y^e Barbariens theyr neyghbours, wherby he had aboute hys person, no small bande of men at armes. Betwene this Capellianus, and Gordian, there was muche discencion, aboute a certayne controuerlie in the lawe. Wherefoze, after Gordian had obayned the name of Emperour, he sente one to succede Capellianus in hys office, & commaunded him to depart from the rule of the Prouince. But he displaying therat, & beyng true to hys Prince (of whom he had receaued that dignitie) gathered all the power he had together. And after he had exhorted them, to continue theyr truth, and orde of allegiaunce, he removed towardes Carthage, leadyng wyth hym a wonderful

derfull greate and stronge Armye, in the whiche there were verie manye menne, not onely of florishing age, but also instructed in the handlinge of all kyndes of weapons, and expert in warrefare, and (through vse of skymythes wth the Barbaryens theyr neyghbours) verie prompte, quicke, and readye to battayle, at all tymes.

When it was declared vnto Gordian, that Capellianus was commynge towardes Carthage, bothe hym selfe, was stryken wth a sodeyne tremblinge feare, and all the Carthagynensses greatly dismayed, who in a dysoordered heape wthoute anye warelyke order (yet hauinge hope of victorie) thruste themselves forwarde out of the Cytie, to meete wth Capellianus.

The olde man Gordian (as some reporte) asone as Capellianus approached to the Cytie, despayning of al good hope, because he perceaued Mariminus to haue a greate power of men then in Affrica remaynyng, hanged hym selfe. But the Commynalte, keepyng secret hys death, did chose his son for theyr Capitayne. So it came to hande stryppes. The Carthagynensses were many more in number, but yet out of order, and vnswyllfull in the warres, and being effeminated with bankettes of voluptuousnes, wanted weapons, and all other warrelyke instrumentes.

For no man brought out of his house, any other weapon, then eyther a Dagger, a Hatchet, or a Huntinge staff, or els a Speare hardened in y^e fyre, as they could get for y^e defence of their bodies. On the contrary part, were Numidians, notable Slingers, and verie connyng horsemen, so that wout wydle, they coulde rule their horses w a wodde. Wherefoze y^e Carthagynensses were easely repulsed, & constrained to flye. For beyng unable, to abide the brunt of their enemies, they threwe away theyr haruesse, and weapons, and toured theyr backs altogether in a rude plise, & thrusting through the gins, and treading one vpon another, there dyd a greater lesse number vnder the amoniges theym selues, then was comen. Sayne by theyr enemyes.

And

Capellianus
Mauritanie.
Numidia.

And in this throng, was Gordianus Sonne slayne, and as many as folowed hym. So that for the multitude of those that were deade, they coulde not discerne the bodies that shoulde be enterred. Neyther coulde the bodye of the younge Gordian be founde. For of so greate a number, whiche fledde, there entered but verie fewe into the Citie agayne, who saued themselves, by luckynge, in darke, and unknowne corners. The reste, remainynge in heapes at the gate, & presynge forwarde, euerye man to get in by force, were by the Iudidian Slingers, and other armed Souldyours, slayne. Whiche caused a meruailouse lamentation, and howlynge of women, and Chylidren, for that they sawe before theyr olone faces, theyr dearest frendes, slayne.

There be whych reporte, that as soone as Gordianus (who for his age abode wythin his owne house) heard that Capellianus was entered into the Cytie, despairing of his safegarde, went into his chamber, as though he woulde scape, and wyth his Gyrdle whych he had about hym, hanged hym selfe.

This was the ende of Gordianus, who was fortunate in the former parte of his lyfe, and now ended the same, in a synnitytude of the Imperyal bygnitie.

Then Capellianus entered into Carthage, & ther put vnto deathe, euerye one of the noble men, whiche remayned oute of the furge of the Battayl. Neyther dyd he abstayne, from the spoylynge of the Temples, and ransackynge all Publike, and priuate Treasures, And goynge vnto other Cities, whiche had abolished the honours of Maximus, the chiefest therin he put to deathe, and the reste he asslycted wyth tormentes: permittynge the Souldyours, to burne, and robbe, the Villages, & feldes therabout, vnder a pretence of reuengynge Maximus: but yet priuelye allarynge the Souldyours heartes vnto hym selfe, to the ende, that if Maximus sped not wel, him selfe might haue the Souldyours good wylls, for the obtaynyng of the Emppie. Suche was the estate of the assayres in Affrica.

Affrica. But after the death of Gordian was heard of in Rome, a meruailouse terrour enuaded the Senate, & people of Rome, for that he was lost, in whome, all their hope, was sytuare. For they knewe now perfectly, that Maximinus wold spare no mā being partely of his owne mynde alperated from theini, and then with an enemies stomake, and manifeste hatred, for iuste causes, detestynge them. Wherefore, they assembled oftentimes togithers, consulting what they might do, and finally (seynge they had entered into one perill) determined to prepare for warre, and elected two Emperours, whiche shoulde wyth equall aucthorite, gouerne the common wealthe, lest that the Principall dominion, shoulde retorne vnto Tyranny.

They assembled therefore, I saie, not in the Coozte as they were wonte before, but in the Temple of Iupiter Capitolyne, the whiche beyng buylded in the highest place of the Citie, the Romaines haue in most estimation. There, the doores beyng shute, they sate alone, & hauinge, as it were, God to their witnesse of their Counsell, and the beholder of all that they intended, they chose furth suche as excelled the reste in age, and dignite, to giue their voyces of election vnto. Out of the which hole numbze, ther were two, named Maximus, and Albinus, through the mooste voyces, created Emperours. Of these two Maximus hadde often bene generall Capitaine in the warres, and also ordered hym, selfe very politiquely, in the gouernaunce of the Citie, wherby he caused the people to haue a very good opinion of his wytt, prouidence, and content lyfe. And Albinus, being a noble mā bozne, twisse Consul, and hauing ruled many prouinces, without strife or complaynte, was reputed the nicker. Thus were they made Emperours, by the decree of the Senate, and endewed w all Imperiall honours. But whiles these thinges were in doing in the Capitolle, the Romain people (uncertain it is, whether through the solliciting of Gordianus frendes, or els stirred ther vnto, by some peruerse rumors) came with force vnto the gates, and filled with multitude of people, & wave

which goeth into the Capitoll. And ther haue Clubbes, & Stones in their handes, labored to interrupte the thinges that were concluded in the Capytoll, refusing chiefly Marimus: alledging that he was more seuerer, then the simple Commons could well bere with all. Wherefore, they were mooste of all offended with hym: cryenge, and threathing, that they would slea them bothe, for his sake. For they requyred a Prince of Gordianus kynred, that in that sample, and name, Thimperiall Dominion myght continue. Then Albinus, and Marimus, beyng garded with all the yowthe of the order of knighthode, and the men of Armes of the Cytie, wearing swoordes, attempted to go furth of the Capitole. But they were dyuyned backe, with Clubbes, and Stones, vntill that throughe the inuention of some one man, they begyled the people after this sorte.

Gordianus an Infant.

There was a litle Infānt, a Son of Gordian's daughter, which was named after his Grandefathers name. The same, they commaunded certayne, whome they sente furth, to fetch vnto them, who findinge hym playeng at home, did put hym vpon their shoulders, & caried hym throughe the myddes of the people, declaring that he was Gordianus newewe, and callinge hym by name, vntill they had brought hym into Capitoll, the people makinge ioyfull acclamacions, and shewing bowes before hym. And after that the Senate had pronounced him Emperour, seeing he could not gouerne Thempyre, because of his tender infancy, the yre of the people was allwaged, and they suffered the olde Emperours to enter into Thimperiall Pallace. But ther happened at that tyme, a pestiferous Calamity vnto the Cytie of Rome, throughe the rash boldnes of two Senatours. For when as the Senate was assembled, about certayne Publicke affayres, two of Marimus Souldiours, which were departed from the Campe, bothe of mydle age came vnto the Court gate, to herken, and spy, what was done, or determined, beyng withoute weapons. And sauing only theyr Iackes, and their Clokes ther vpon, they

they stood together, amonges the reste of the people. But whyles all other stood at the doore, two or thre at the mooste beyng more desirous to heare what was sayde, then the reste, entred into the Court, and passed a lytle further, then the Altare of Victoria. Therwithall, a Senator, which a lytle before had bene Counsell, named Callicanus, a Carthaginiese borne, and an other whiche had bene Pretor, named Decius Callicanus, sodenly (when they looked for no suche chaunce, and had theyr handes still vnder their Clokes) with Decius their daggers stabbed the Souldiours to the hartes. For all the Senate, because of the late sedicion, dyd weare theyr weapons, some openly, some pryuely, to defende their bodys wall, from the trechery of theyr enemyes. in the The Souldiours beyng thus murdered, when they were not able, so sodenly, to defende them selues) laye prostrat before the Altare. With which syght, the other beyng dismayed, throughe the murder of theyr Companions, and fearynge the flockynge together of the people, because them selues were without weapons, furthwith they fledde away.

Then Callicanus lefte hastily oute of the Court into the myddes of the people, and there shewing his sword, and his hande, flowing with bloode, exhorted them, to pursue, and slea the enemyes of the Romaine people, and Senate, and the frendes, and Companions of Marimus. Where all the people being provoked, receaued Callicanus with ioyfull shoutes, and pursued the Souldiours with stones, as farre as they well myght. And the Souldiours, hauing gotten into their Campe, a fewe of the beyng wounded, and hurt, they harnessed them selues, & defended their Trenches. But Callicanus (seying he had already set vpon suche a myschiese) raysed by a ciuple, and very pernicious battaile. For after he hadde commaunded all the Armies to be broken vp (in the whiche were kepte weapons, rather of pompe, then of warre) where with euery man myght arme hym selfe, accordynge ly. And hauing opened the Swoordeplayars Halles, caused euery man to arme himself with his own harnesse.

The Audacitye of Callicanus.

A a. y.

And

And taking out of the houses, and shoppes in the Cytie, what so euer weapon was within them, cyther sword, speare, dagger, or axe, when as fure and anger had made all thing y come to hande a weapon, fure with thei went in plumes, withoute ordre, vnto the Campe, and, as yf thei shuld assaulte a Citie, thei besieged the walles, and gates of the Campe. But the Souldiours within, beyng expert in fyghting, defended them selues with the battailmentes of their walles, and their Targettes, repulsing the common people, with often shotte of arrowes, and their longe speares. Finally, when the people determined to retorne into the Citie, because thei were wried, and the moste parte of the Sworde players sore wounded, beyng very neare nyghte, the Souldiours, perceauynge the rechelesse regarde of the people in departinge (for the Romaynes thoughte not, that the Souldiours durste fyghte with them, hande to hande, or being so fewe in number, to enter oute of their fortreffe, to fyght with so great a multitude) sodeinly settinge open their gates, made a strange, and forcible inuasio against that dysordered heape of people. In that conflict were all the Sworde players slayne, and a greate number of the people, thruste to death in the presse. Which ones canded, the Souldiours returned to their Campe, because it was not farre of. Hereupon, there rose moze behemist indignacion amonges the Senatours, and people of Rome. Wherefore thei chose for their Capitaynes, euery noble, & valyaunt man, throughout all Italye, and leuenge all the yowthe together, armed them with such weapons, as in that sodeine tumult, thei could get. The chiefest, and strongest parte dyd Marius, leade to fight against Mariminus, the rest remayned for the custodie, and defence, of the Citie. In the meane whyle, there were daylye skirmishes, and assaultes, at the walles of the fortreffe, but to no purpose, nor profyete, the Souldiours, defending them selues from above, and dring away thame fullie, the common people, whyche thei strake, and wounded.

Albinus

Albinus, whyche remayned at home, requiered the people by proclamation, to take truce, and become frendes, with the Souldiours, vnto whome he promysed also perdone of all they had committed. But he coulde induce neyther partye thereto. The mischiefc encreasinge dayly, moze & moze. For the people disdayned, that so great a multitude, shoulde be had in contempte of so small a number. On thother syde, the Souldiours greuously grudged, that they shoulde suffer that of the Romaynes, whyche they neuer looked for of the Barbarous nations.

Finallye, when the assaultes proceeded not, as the people woulde haue it, it seemed good to their Capitaines, to turne away, al the Riuers, & waters, which came by Cundittes into the Campos, that the Souldiours myght be afflicted with wante of water, and with thyrste. Wherefore, in makinge of Trenches and cuttinge the Cundyt Wysses, they tourned away all the streames of water from the fortreffe. But the Souldiours, perceauynge the peryll imminent, and cryken with desperation, opened their gates, and runninge vpon the multitude, which ranne away, pursued theym vnto the very Gates of the Cytie.

Then the Common people, beyng Inferiour, and not able to sustayne thys cruell conflict, gat them into theyr houses, and from thence, vered the Souldiours, who durste not enter into the houses to theym vnknewen. Wherefore, they seynge the houses, & shoppes shutte, caste fyre to the doores and porches, which the stoode out towardes the streete, wherof there are verie many in Rome. Wherby it came to passe, that partlie through the farre distance of the houses, and partlie through the timber buyldinge, a great parte of the Cytie was burned, and many men of ryche substance, sodeynlye became poore: hauinge losse notable possessiouns, cyther welthye, throughe the reuenues therof, or elles of great estimation throughe the beauty of the same. Neither was there a smal number of men destroyed. For that theyr portalles and doores

Aa.iii.

beinge

The Cytie of Rome set on fyre.

The historie of Herodian

beynge on fyre, they had no waye to escape furthe of the houses. The substaunce, and goodes, of ryche men, was ransacked, the Souldyours geuyng the whole myndes to spoyle, and robberye, and neadye Beggers of the Cytie, mynglyng theym selues amonges them.

But the rage of the fyre so wandered, that it burned and consumed more houses, then some greate Cytie hath in compasse of buyldyng. Durynge the tyme that thys calamitye was done at Rome, Mariminus, makynge haste in hys iourneye, was come vnto the borders of Italye. And haupng sacrifyced vpon the Aultars, whyche were there erected, he continued on hys voyage, commaundyng the Souldyours to kepe on theyr Harnesse, and marche in order of Battayle. But seynge we haue made mencion alreadye, of the reuolte of Affrike, the Ciuyll warre at Rome, and the actes by Mariminus, wyth hys iourney bythercunto, we wyl declare the reste hereafter.

The ende of the seuenth Booke.

The

The Argumente of the eighth Booke of Herodian.



At the begynnyng of the eighth, and laste booke, is shewed, how, and in what order, Mariminus came vnto the Confinnes, and boundes of Italye, by the Alpes, as farre as the Cytie of Aquileia, where he founde resistance. After that is described the situation of that Cytie, the preparation for the warre, the assaultes made by Mariminus armye, & the stout resistance of the Aquileiens. Consequentlye, howe Mariminus was slayne, and what ioye was made therefore. And how Albinus (which the aucthour in the former booke called Balbinus) & Maximus, after they had a litle space, reigned in great tranquillitie, were slayne by the men at armes. After whome, Gordianus beyng, xliiii. yeares of age, enioyed the Emperre alone.

Aa.iiii.

The



Wane in the laste booke, recy-
ted, what Maximinus did, after
the death of Gordia, his toynay
into Italie, wyth the sedicion,
and reuolte, of the people, and
Souldiours, within the Cytie
selte of Rome. When Maximi-
nus was arryued in the con-
fynes of Italie, he sente certayne

Scolyers before, to espye, whe-
ther there were any skale, or enbushmentes, lying in
the bottom of the Alpes, and the thicke woodes there:
And led the Armye, into the playne, commaundyng the Alpes
the men of Armes, to march forwarde, in a square or
dyke, to thende that a great parte of the felde, myght
be couered with them. And hauing brought all impe-
dimentes, and Cartage, into the myddes, him selfe fo-
lowed, with the Vcome of his Garde, to rescuethem,
if they were distressed. On eyther syde, the wynges
were of me of Armes, on Barbed Hozles, with Pau-
ritanian, Slynkers, Archers of the oziental Regias;
and hozlemen of Cernanye, whome he had waged;
for thencease of his ayde. And he was accustomed, to
set them in the fore fronte of the battayle, against his
enemyes, because they shoulde sustayne, and receaue
the fyrste bynde, beyng bouldre, and stronge me. And
if nede so requyred, he had rather, those Barbarous,
& rude people, were losse, than any other of his owne
Souldiours.

After they had passed the plaines, obseruing theyr
due order in marchinge; they came to a cytie of It-
alie, named of the enhabitauntes Cumona. The same Cum-
is situate in a lowe playne, at the foote of the Alpes. na.

There, the Scourers reported vnto Maximinus,
that the Towne was voyde, and forsaken of the enhab-
itauntes, who were all fledde; the gates of the Cytie;
and the houses, consumed wyth fyre, and all thynges;

whiche was in the Towne, or fildes, carped awaye, or burnt, no foode remaininge, eyther for man, or beaste.

Altherwith Marimin⁹ was veri glad: for he thought, that other people, wold doo semblably, through feare of him. But contrarywyse, the Souldours murmured, and grudged, that they should in the very begynning, be vered wth famine. And when thei had passed ouer the nyghte, some of them, in the open, and comen houles, other some, in the playne spelde, immediately after the Sonne rysing, they came vnto the Alpes.

The gre^t tenes of the Alpes
The Cy^p them⁹ &
The Joⁿ maⁿ Seas
Thiese be wonderfull longe wylls, compassynge Italie, in maner of a wal, and so high, that thei seame to pearce the cloudes, so long also, that thei enuiron all Italie, touching, on the leste hande, the Tirchenian, and on the right syde, the Ionian Seas: beyng full of brode, and thicke forrestes, with very narrowe pathes, and bnneth passable, by reason of the height of the broken Rockes, and steepenes of the highe banckes: hauing notwithstanding many narrowe passages, made with labour of hande, by the aunciente Italians. Wherefore, a meruelous feare entred into the Souldours hartes, to passe that waye: dreading, y^t the hyl toppe: was already taken by their enemies, and all the straites stopped, to forbid them passage. Neither did they feare seame sonde, to them that behelde the nature of the place.

After thei had passed the Alpes, and were descended into their Campe, thei began to reioyce, and baquet together. And Mariminus then receiued a sure trust, that all his affayres, shall haue prosperous successe: seying that the Italians, trusted not vnto the difficultie of the places, wherein, them selues were wonte to lurke, and prouide for their safety, and where, they might lye in waye for their enemies, and fightynge fro^m aboue, easely distresse the. When thei were entred into y^e playne, y^e Scourers brought word, y^e Aquileia the greatest Citie of Italie, had shut their gates, and that the Pannoniaⁿ b^{an}des, which went before, had verily fiercely assailed the walles, yet not withstanding, they

Aquileia

they often attemptes were all in vayne. Wherefore, beyng werled, they were constrained to departe, a great number, of Stones, Speares, and Arowes, hauing hurte them, from the toppe of the walles. Then Mariminus, being ver y angry with the Pannonians, as thonghe thei had not foughte valeantelye ynoughe, made haste thither wardes: trustinge, without any more labour, to wynn the Citie.

But Aquileia, as it is a myghty Towne, was abundantly inhabited of people. And as it were the Parte tuacio of Towne of Italy, & the territorie of Illiria, it did fro Aquileia: the mayne lande, minstre, to those that sayled in the Seas, plenty of all such necessaries, as was brought thither by the Kyuers, and the lande: And from the Sea, vnto the mayne lande, thinges very necessarye for the hygher Countreys, whych throughe the byternes of wynter, were nothyng fertile. But chysely it mynistred wyne, wherewith that Regyon abounded, vnto the nigher Countreys, that hadde no byne trees at all. The whyche caused, that besydes the greates number of Cyteins, there repayred vnto that Cyte, very many Straungers, and Marchautes also. And Certes, the multitude was at this tyme muche more augmented, by the assembly of Countrey people, who haupnge forsaken theyr owne small Droupes, and Vlages, dyd truste them selues, vnto the greatenes of this Cyte. The olde wall, whereof, was a greates parte fallen downe. For, whyles the Romaynes flozished in Dominion, the Cytes of Italie, neaded neyther wall, nor weapon; luyng in quyet tranquillitie, and beyng associated in the Rule of Chempyre with them. But nowe, necessitye compellyng them, they buyl: The pre- pared by theyr walles agayne, wyth Towres, Bul- paracion werkes, and Rapiers: and haupnge fortifyed their of the A- Cyte wythin furth, and shutte theyr Gates, stode quilycys all togyther, bothe daye, and nyghte vpon the for the de walles, valeauntely dyspyng backe theyr ene- fenses of their Ci- myes.

W b. ij.

Theyr tye.

Crispi-
nus Me-
nophilus

Their Capitaynes of chiefeſt power, were two men which had bene Conſulles, choſen by the Senate, named Crispinus, and Menophilus. Theſe procured wth much diligence, all thynges neceſſary, to be brought beſore hande into the Citie, to thende thei mighte the longer time ſuſtaine the ſiege. Ther was in y^e Towne great abundaunce of water, throughte the great number of welles, the Riuer whych ran a longe by the walles, and the dyches, betwene them, and their enemies.

Theſe thinges beyng thus ordered within the Citie, when Maximinus hearde, that thei defended their walles ſtoutly, and had ſhut their gates againſt hym, he reſolved to ſende, vnder colo^r of Ambaſſade, ſome which ſhould ſpeake vnto them, and (yf it were poſſible) perſwade them, to open the gates of the Citie vnto hym.

He had then in hys Armys, a certayne Magiſtrate of Aquileia, whole wyfe, child^{re}, and houſehold, were enclouſed within the Citie. This man therfore, with a certayne Capitaine, he ſente as orators vnto theym: truſting, that the Citezens wold eaſely obey his authoritie. When thei approached nigh the walles, they ſpake vnto the people on this wyſe, and ſayed. That their Commune Emperour commaunded them, layenge al armes a part, to obſerue peace, to receaue him as their frende, and not as they^r enemye, and to occupye them ſelues in prayers, and ſacrificing to they^r Goddes, rather then in deſyre to murder. To take compaſſion of their native Countrey, ſhortly (yf thei perſiſted in their obſtinacie) lyke to come to vtter ruine, & decay. That thei might, yf thei wold, with on dedde, ſaue them ſelues, & their Countrey. For thei ſaid, that their good Emperour, wold forget, and forgieue, all offences, there beſore committed, ſeynge that it was not their tranſgreſſion, but the peruerſe fault of other men. Suche wordes did the Ambaſſadors ſpeake vnder the wall, wyth ſo loude voyce, that thei mighte eaſely be harde, although, not of all the people, yet of as many, as ſtoode vpon the walles, and Towres.

For

For they dyd wyth ſylence, & attentiuely geue eare vnto that the Ambaſſadors ſpake. But Crispinus, fearyng, leſt throught theſe allurements, they wold be perſuaded, to take peace for warre, and open they^r gates vnto they^r enemies (as the common people are euer wauerynge and unconſtaunte) ranne from one wall to another, earnestly deſpyng, and inſtauntly beſechyng them to perſeuer valyauntly, and reſiſte manfully, and not to violate they^r faythe, and allegyaunce, towarde the Senate, and the people of Rome, nor yet neglecte the Title, and fame of Italy, ſo long tyme preſerued from the inuaſions of forreyn enemies, nor geue credit, vnto a falſe, periured, and traitorous Traunte, nor beyng allured wyth gentle ſayned talke, runne headlonge vnto they^r owne manifeſt deſtructiō. But truſt to the fortune of y^e warre, whych moſt commonly is ſo vncertayne, that ſometimes a greate huge hoſte, are of a ſmall number diſcomfited: and thoſe, whych ſeeme the mightier, are by theym whiche are compted the weaker, diuers tymes vanquiſhed. Neyther that they ſhould feare the greatneſſe of hys armye. For (quod he) they that fyghte in another mannes quarell, when they ſee, that the good happe of the victorie ſhall departe to another, doo but fayntly endure the Battayle: perceayng them ſelues onely to be pertakers of the peryll, and the ſerue proſyt of the victorie, to remayne vnto another man. But they whych fyghte for their countrey, beſydes that they ought to be of better hope (for they contende to take nothyng of others, but to defende they^r owne) are alſo of a greater ſtomacke, as thoſe whome no deſyre of dominion, but euerye mans owne neceſſitie, compelleth to fyghte, becauſe the commoditie of the victorie, is chyefely due vnto them.

Crispinus ſpeakyng theſe wordes, nowe vnto euerye man perticulerly, and then to all generallly, beyng a man of hys owne diſpoſition honourable, and ſporyng in the Romayne eloquence, beſydes that, gratefull to euerye man, for hys meke gouernaunce, did eaſly ſtabliſhe the hartes of y^e people to continue in

Wh. iii.

their

South-
sayers.

Beles.

their duty and allegiaunce. Wherefore he commaunded the Ambassadors to departe to Mariminus againe, without anye thyng concluded. It was reported, that Crispinus was hartened to abide the fortune of þe battayle, by the answer of the Southsayers, whiche reported, that the inwardes of the beastes, betokened lucke successe of his affaires. And in deade, the Italians bled to geue much credit to y^e superstition. There were spred abroad besydes the Oracles of a certayne Idole in that countrey, which promised victorie. The inhabitants there cal the same Idole Beles, and do with great reverence worshyppe it, interpreting him to be Apollo. Whose Image, certayne of Mariminus owne Souldiours, affirmed that they sawe in the ayre fighting for the Citie. Which thing, whether many beleued it for a trueth, or whether the fable pleased the, to mitigate thereby the infamy of so great an army (because they were vnequal in battayle, to so small a number of Cyprians, not exercised in the warres (that it might seeme they were overcome rather by y^e Goddes then men) I am not very certayn. But the straungenes of the matter, made it seeme more credible.

After the Ambassadors were returned wout any resolute conclusion, Mariminus being styred w much more fury, made greater hast then he dyd before. But when he came vnto the Ruer, whiche runneth xii. miles of from the Cypre, he found it of a very depe and broad Channell. For in that season of the yere, the Snowe (which the longe wynter before, caused to endure) being molten vpon the nere hylles, had made so great a floude, that the Armye could not passe ouer it, by anye meanes. For the Aquileians had broken, and caried away the Bridge, which was a goodly and sumptuous peece of worke, buylded by the auncient Emperours, of square stone, with many small pillars standing one by another vpon the same. Wherefore when tharmie could passe ouer, neyther by Bridge, nor belfell (for there was none nigh hand) he stole styl in a dumpe, musing what to do. Wnt certayne Germanes, being ignorant, wth what swiftnes, and violence

violence, the Ryuers of Italye did runne, & supposing that theyr course was gentle, and slow ouer the fields, as the Ryuers in theyr Countrey (which for that they haue no swift streame, are easly congeled ouer wth felle) aduentured them selues, & their hories that were perfect in swimming, into the middes of the Channell: where, throughe violence of the Streame, they were drowned. After Mariminus had lven styl in Campe, ii. or. iii. dayes, he cast a depe trench aboute the same, that no enemies shoulde sodenly set vpon them, & remayned vpon that side of the Ruer, consulting howe he myght make a Bridge to passe ouer. Whyles he so abode very pensife, because there was no tymber, nor Boates with the whiche ioyned together, he myghte make a Bridge, certayne Carpenters declared vnto hym, that in the Villages rounde aboute, forsaken of the Inhabitantes, there were many round Tubbes and Hoggesheades, wherin the people were wonte to carry wyne: the which beinge rounde like thyppes, yf they were bounde together, in maner of small Boates, would easly carue them ouer. For being fastened together, couered with Dyars, or Twigges, & well baleded with earth, they would neuer be drowned. When y^e was finished, y^e souldiours easly passed ouer to thother Shore. And there, hauing burned al y^e villages which they founde abandoned of th inhabitants, did cut down all y^e vines, & trees, wherby they greatly defaced y^e beauty of y^e region. For all the countrey seemed to be copassed aboute, in maner of a Theater, w trees set in due order, & vines ioyned together, lyfted vp in height like vnto a Scaffold. At which being plucked by y^e rootes, tharmie approached nigh vnto y^e citie. Neuertheles because they were all wery, Theyr our would not y^e they shoulde furthw begyn y^e assault. But hauing encaped, more then an arrowes shoote fro the Citie, deuided the into hundreds, appoynted the order of their marching like vnto a wedge, smal before, and broad behinde, & limittig to euery Company, a part of the wall, to scale, and batter, he gaue them licence to recreate them selues, for one daye.

That

What passed, he began to geue the assault, and hauing moued to the wall, all sortes of engyns, when no kynde of Batterie was omitted, there was almost euery day cruell skirmishes fought. For the Souldiours enuironed the walles, as it were with a toyle, or nette, and fought with muche stoutnes of stomacke. And on the contrarie parte, the Aquileiens resisted verie valiantly: who hauinge shutte the doores of their temples, and houses, dyd all together, wyth theyr wyues, and Children, vpon the walles, Towers, and Battlements, defende theyr Cytie. Neyther was there any age, whiche refused to fyghte for their Countrey.

Mariminus then pulled downe al the Suburbes, and whatsoeuer buyldynge was without the Cytie, with the tymbre wherof, he made all kynde of engyns, and instrumentes, wherwith he might batter the walles, or at least toyle, some part therof, whereby the armye myght enter into y^e Cytie, and in spoylynge, sackynge, and defacynge, the same, leaue it desolate, and voyde of habitation. For he thoughte it y^e woulde be agaynst his honour, to go vnto Rome, before he had destroyed the Cytie, which fyrst resisted him in Italy.

Wherefore, he rode wyth hys Sonne, whome he had ioyned vnto hym in the Emperre, amonges the Souldiours, promplyng them many good morowes, and exhortynge theym, to stande lyke menne to theyr sacklynge.

But the Cytizens of Aquileia, threw downe great stones vpon them. And hauing fylled verie many Ladels with Brimstone, Lyne, and Pitch, as soone as the Souldiours began to scale the wals, they powred downe y^e same so faste, that it seemed violent thunders. The y^e Pitch & baggage, fell vpo y^e naked partes of y^e souldiours bodies, thei threw fro the their brigaders, & the rest of their harnesse, y^e vpon wexing very boate, and their tumber engyns being set on fyre. Then a man mighte see the Souldiours, throwe away their owne harnesse. Which thing, hauig a colour, that thei were dispoiled by the vanquishers, was inuented, rather by subtiltie of arte, then force of batayle. Whereby it happened

happened, that many of the Souldiours, eyther loste theyr fyghte, or elles had their faces, and other bare partes of their bodies, burned. The Aquileiens threw downe also, into their Towres, & engins of woode, many torche stauies, couered wyth Rosen, and pitch, whose endes, were sharpened, with heades, lyke vnto arrowes: whiche being kindled, and sticked faste into the Timber worke, dyd easely set all on fyre. What notwithstanding, the fyrste daies, the fortune was equall on eyther syde. But anon after, the courage of Mariminus armye dyd alwaie, and because theyr hope was frustrate, and had deceiued the, thei wered euery day more pelisse then other. For those, who thei before supposed, wold not abyde the brunt first of theyr force, thei nowe perceiued, not onely, not to shrinke, but also, to resiste valeauntely. Contrariwyse, the stomackes of the Aquileiens, were daylye, more, and more enhaunsed. And hauinge, thurgh vse, obtained, bothe therperfe feate of fyghtinge, and therwith all manfull corage, thei so despyled the Souldiours, that they mocked them, with iestyng at Mariminus, when he came nigh vnto the walles, and bluffering oute, many opprobrious tautes agaynst him, and his Sone. Wherewith he being chaufed, when he could not auenge him selfe vpon hys enemyes, he put to cruel death, many of his own Capitaines: alleging, y^e thei had not like valeaunte men, and true subiectes, done their full endeavour, in the assaultinge of the Cytie. Whereby it came to passe, that the Souldiours became more angry towarde hym: And his enemyes, had him in more contempt, and derision. It chaunced besydes, that the Aquileiens aboarded with plenty of vitayle, and all other necessaries. For what so euer was expedient, to the sustenance of men, and horses, the same was before hande brought into the Cytie. On the other syde, the armye languished with penury of foode. And after all the trees were cut downe, and the fieldes wasted, some of the Souldiours lay in Cabans, such as thei could for haste make, and other soune in the open fieldes, subiect to the heate of the Sonne,

Afore
pulle.

And the weakenes of the Kayne. Neyther was there anye kynde of noysshmente, broughte vnto them, for them selues, or their cattell. For all the wayes, and passages, were by the diligence of the Romaines, shutt vp with greate walles, and Gates. The Senate also, had sente certayne Senatours, with a compaignie of armed personnes, chosen oute of all Italye, to defende the Shores, and Banens, geuing no man licence to sayle. So that all thinges done at Rome, were kept close, from the eares of Marimyne. All the highe wayes besydes, and Bypathes, were diligently watched, that no man should passe by them. So it came to passe, that the Armys, whiche besyged the Towne, was it selfe also enclosed rounde aboute. For thei coulde neyther take Aquileia, nor passe forward towards Rome, through wante of shippes, and wagons, whiche were all before hande taken vp by the Romaines. The rumour also thurgh suspicion augmented, that all the Romaine people, were already in Armes, and that Italy, with all the Illyrian, and Barbarous nations, whiche inhabyte the East, and Southe Contreys, had wth one consent, conspyred, to ioyne together, against Mariminus, for the despyte, and grudge, they bare vnto hym. Wherefore, the Souldiours fell into dyspayre of good hope, being afflicted, wth scarcetye of all thinges, and hauyng no water, but such, as thei drew out of y^e Ryuer, which was defiled with bloode, and deade Carcases. For the Aquileyns, threwe into the Ryuer, such deade bodies, as thei coulde not bury. And those whiche perished with sworde, or sicknes, in the Campe, were throwen into the Ryuer lyke wyse. Amonges whome, there were many, whiche died by famyn, hauing when thei were drowned, some breath remainynge.

Whyles the Army abode thus sorowfull, boide of all succoure, sodainly, when Mariminus rested in hys Pavillion, one daye vacant from batayle, and all the Souldiours, were gone to reste theim selues, in theyr Cabans, and Tentes, the men at Armes, which had theyr Stacions, within the Citie of Rome, vnder the

the Byll Alban, and therein, their wiues, & chylde, consulted, and agreed, to sea Marimyne: that thei might be ones exempt, from that longe, & inextricable syege of the Cytie, and moning of warre against Italy, for the loue of a Tyrant, who was abhorred of all men.

Wherefore, taking corage vnto them, about none tyde, thei wente to his Pavillion, the yeomen of hys Garde, conspyring together with them. And there, after thei hadde pulled downe hys Images, thei stewe hym, and hys Sonne, when they came furthe, to speke vnto the Souldiours: and with them, the lord of great Maister of his house, and all his dearest frendes. And then threwe their bodies furth wth despyte, leuyng them, to be deuoured of Dogges, and Wyddes: leding onely the two Emperours heades vnto Rome. This eande of lpe, had Mariminus, with his Son, both receyuinge condigne punishment, of their yll ordered gouernaunce. At the first tidings, of the two Prynces death, the Army shode styll, amased, & vncertayne what thei might doo, for it was not equally accepta-
ble vnto them all, especiallve not vnto the Pannonians, and Barbarous Thracians, who hadde deuyered the Emperre, vnto Mariminus. But when they perceiued that the deade coulde not be vndone, they helde them selues contented althoughe vnwillingly, and sayned to reioyce with the reste. Then, layeng a syde their weapons, thei went to the walles of Aquileye, lyke peaceable me, and there declaring the death of Marimyne, despyred that the Gates might be set open vnto them, beyng now of their mortall enemyes, become their louing frendes. But the Capitaynes of Aquileia, would not permitt it, but shewed furth bypon the walles, the Images of Marimus, Albinus, and Gordian, Emperours, crowned with Garlandes of Lawrell. Vnto the which Images, them selues byste making ioyful acclamacions, exorted the Army also, to acknowledge, and reuerence them, whome the Senate, and people of Rome, hadde chosen to be Emperours.

For, said thei, the other Gordians before passed, are a-

C. v. monges

The death
of Mar-
iminus &
his Son.

amonges the Goddes. They did set furth also vpon the walles, a market of all necessities, with greate abundance of meate, wyne, garmetes, and all other thinges, which that riche, and flourishing Cytie, could minister vnto them. That thing, did meruelously abashe the Souldiours: who perceyued, that the Cytizens, had store ynoughe of vitayll, to abyde a farre longer seage. And on the other side, them selues, being afflicted with wante of foode, should rather haue all perished, than conquered that Citie, abounding wyth all thinges expedient for mans relief. Whyles the Souldiours thus abode vnder the walles, and tooke such thinges, as their necessitie required, in companie of the Citezens, their countenance was of peace, and friendship, a forme of siege, as yet remaining, for that the Romayne Souldiours, laye aboute the walles whiche were enclosed, and shut. In the meane while, that these thinges were in doing at Aquileya, y^e horsemen, which carried the Emperours heades to Rome, making great haste, with speedy diligence, were receiued into every Citie, and Town, with the gates open, and the multitude of Citezens, and inhabitants, beyinge Lawrell in their handes. And then hauinge passed y^e Marishes, & Lakes, whiche are betwene Al-

Alinum. tinum, & Rauenna, thei founde Marimus in Rauenna, leuieng, & waging Souldiours out of the Citie, Marim^{us}. and Italy, and calling a great number of Germans vnto his ayde, the which were sent him, by the comon people of Germany, who he before in his Proconsulship amonges them, had prudently governed.

Whyle he was thus mustering his power against Marim^{us}, y^e horsemen arrived ther sodeli, bringing wth the y^e Princes heades, & declared y^e victorie, wth the prosperous successe of their affaires, & y^e good wil, & coler, of y^e people, & Army, to y^e obedienc of those Emperours, who y^e Senate had elected. The theise thiges were so sodeli wthout expectacio reported, furthwth, the people ran vnto the Aulters to sacrifice, every man singyng, and reioysyng at the victorie, whiche wythoute any trouble some busynes, they had obtayned.

Then

Then Marimus after the sacrifice ended, dismissed, the horsemen to Rome, to cary thither, the sayd heades, and declare the whole circumstance, vnto the people. When they were arrived at the Cytie, and hauyng putte the heades vpon twoo speares, carried the same throughe y^e streets, to be seene of the people, no tonge can tell, the ioye, and myrth was there that daye. For there was no person, either yonge, or olde, but ranne vnto the Temples, and Aulters.

As man abode within hys owne house, but ranne lyke madde men, shoutyng, and reioysyng one with an other, and gatheryng theym selues together, in a circle, as though some manne woulde make an Oracion vnto them. Albinus hym selfe offered an hundred beastes, and all the Magistrates, reioysed about measure, as though they had escaped y^e are, whych before henge ouer theyr neckes. Purseuantes, & Postes, were sente beydes, wyth Laurell in theyr handes, to beare those newes vnto all the Prouinces.

Whyle thys so great ioye, and myrthe, continued amonges the Romaynes, Marimus remoued fro Rauenna, and went vnto Aquileia: hauyng passed al the Marishes, in the whiche the Ryuer Eridanus, and the nyghe Lakes, doth overflowe, so that they runne into the Sea, by .vii. armes, and therefore, the nyghe inhabitants, cal the same Lake, in theyr tonge. .vii. Seas. Furthwith the Aquileiens opened their gates, and receaued Marimus. And verie manye Cyties of Italye, sente theyr chiefe Magistrates, as Ambassadors vnto him, clothed in white garmetes, & crowned wyth Laurell, bringyng with theym, the Images of theyr Countrey Goddes, and Crownes of Golde, yf there were any, amonges their chiefest Jewels: wherewithall, they gratified Marimus, and strowed bowes to him in his passage. The armye which had besieged Aquileia, mette hym also, in peaceable apparell, wyth Laurell in their handes: but not with so trewe and so, vnyng affection, as with a sayned good wyll, and reuerence, for the tyme onelye, applyed vnto the present estate, of the Prince. Pea, many of them moyned priue-

Ec. iii.

ly, that

lye, that he whom they had chosen was slayne: & those whiche the Senate had created, possessed the Principallitie.

After Marimus had spent the first, & second day, in offering of sacrifice, the thyrday he assembled all his army, together in the playne, & there sitting in his Tribunal seate, made this Oration vnto them.

Howe profitable your penitence, and fauour reconciled with the Romayne people, hath been vnto you, your selues haue by experience throughlye learned, in acceptyng peace for warre, and obseruyng the othe of true warriors, which is one the most holy, & sacred, mysterie of the Romaine Emperre. Wherefore, you ought hereafter, to enioye the same comoditie, in gardyng your loyaltye, and saythe, towards the people, and Senate of Rome, & to vs your Emperours, who, through our nobilitie, bothe of byrth, & in actes done, as it were by certayne degrees ascended, the Senate, and people of Rome, haue elected. Neyther is the possession of principallitie peculiar vnto one man, but of olde antiquitie, common vnto all the Romayn people. For in the Cytie selfe, is establisshed the Fortune of the Emperre, and to vs with you, is committed the administration of the same. If you wyl therfore, retaine with you, that order, and modestye, that becommeth you, and geue due honour, and reuerence, vnto your Princes, ye shall not onely obtrayne vnto your selues a blessed lyfe, flowyng, and aboundyng with all goodnes, but also all Nations, and Cyties, luyng in rest, wyl conynewe in theyr duetye of allegyaunce. We shall lyue, as youre owne heartes desyre: euerye man at home in his owne house, not troubled with warres in foreyne Countreys (that beyng oure charge, to see the Barbarous people, remayne in peace, and defende the same) For whyles there are two Emperours, bothe the Cytie, and foreyne affaires, shalbe administred more easely: one of theym beyng alwayes readye, to go whither necessitie shall call hym. Neyther nede ye to doubt, that any memorye shall remayne, of that is tofore done, eyther in vs
for

(for whatsoeuer ye byd, was by commaundement) or in the Romayne people; or elles in anye other Nation, whiche for iniurie done vnto theym, haue rebelled. Let all be forgotten, let there be a perfecte bonde of constante frendshyppe, and a perpetuall saythe of loue, and modestie.

After Marimus had spoken these wordes, and promysed to distribute muche money amonges theym, he sojourned a lytle whyle at Aquilcia, and then determined to retourne to Rome.

Wherefore, hauing dismissed the rest the Armie into the Prouinces, and theyr owne Stations, him selfe returned to Rome, with the Primos of his Garde, (who hauyng the chiefe charge of the Emperours personne, were chosen by Albynus) and manye Germanes his frendes, in whome he had moste assistance, as in those, whome before he was Emperour, he had gouerned. When he entered into the Cytie, Albinus mette hym, with yonge Gordian in his companye. The Senate, and all the people receyued them with Joyful Cries, & Shoutes, as if they triumphed.

But notwithstanding that the Empire were gouerned bothe openly and priuely, with much modest grauitie, euerye man spake well of it, and all the people were gladd with the Princes, for that they were noble men borne, & worthy the Emperre, yet the spiteful, and crabbed stomackes of the Pretorian Souldyours, could not wel abide, to heare those ioyfull praises of the people, but grudged; & murmured agaynst that nobilitie: beyng sore grieved, that the Princes were created by the Senate. Theyr grudge was augmented, by reason of the Germanes, whome Marimus retayned with hym in the Cytie.

For they thought, that the Germanes woulde worke theym myschiefe, yf they attempted any great enterpryse.

They feared also treason, lest perhaps they shoulde be put out of seruice, for their sakes: beyng myndfull of Senerus the Emperour, who discharged fro theyr luynges, all the Sclars of Pertynax.

Wherefore

Wherfore, one daye, when playes were celebrated in the Capitole, and mens mindes addicted vnto reuels, and pastyme, sodenly the Souldiours did manifestly shewe farthe, they longe dissimuled rancour. For beinge enflamed with yre, they ranne all together, in a franticke mood, vnto Thempervall Palayce: requirynge the two olde Emperours to deathe.

It happened then (as the Diuell woulde haue it) that them selues agreed not very wel together. But, as the desyre to raygne, is insatiabie, and the power of gouernaunce indiuisible) eyther of theym, coneyted to be the chiefe Ruler. For Albinus was stomacked thereunto, wyth the nobilitie of hys byrthe, and hys twyle beyng Consul. And Marinius was encouraged, wyth hys Gouernaunce of the Citie, and because he was the moze skilfull in all affayres. But in deade, they bothe dignities of Senatours, and they sufficent nobilitie of byrthe, dyd prycke them bothe for warres, eyther to coneyte the sole Regiment, whiche was the cause of theyr owne destruction.

For when Marinius, hearynge that the Pretorian Souldiours were comme to flea hym, determined to cal for the ayde of the Germainys, whiche were in the Citie, & seemed able ynoughe, to withstande the Pretorians, Albinus, suspecting some deceyte to be forged against hym (because he knewe that the Germainys fauoured Marinius) prohybited them to be sent for: denyng, that they were called to resyste the Pretorians, but onely to the entent Marinius might obtrayne the rule him selfe alone.

Whyles they thus contended wythin them selues, loo, sodenly wyth one assente, the Souldiours were byolentlye entered into the Palayce, haryng beaten downe the docters. There toke they bothe the olde men, rente the garmentes they had on (beyng in deade synple, for that they abode wythin the doores) and drewe them bothe naked, out of the Palayce, beatinge and shokynge theym, as Emperours chosen out of the order of Senatours. And pullynge theym by theyr Beardes, and eye lyddes, sparngge no parte

parte of their body, with all the shame thei coulde despyse, thei caried them throughe the myddes of the Citie, vnto their Campe: determining, not to murther them in the Palayce, but rather, to tormēt them with a slowe kynde of death, that thei might feale the more payne.

But when thei harde that the Germainys knewe the matter, and were therefore fallen to harness, and comynge against them, furthwith, thei put the two Marim², olde men to death, after thei had moste bylaynouslye and Albi², ordered them. And hauing left their bodyes, in the myddes of the waye, thei lysted by yonge Gordianus in their Armes (when nothing elles was nere hande) Gordia² nus sole and proclaymed him Emperour. And then thei called Empe² often vnto the people, sayinge, that thei hadde slayne Empe² wyth their owne handes, those, whome the people re² lected at the fyrste: and chosen Gordian, the ne² uewe of that Gordian, whiche the Romayne people, had compelled to be Emperour.

This yonge Gordian therfore, thei ledde into theyr Campe, shut their Gates, and there abode in quiete. And the Germaines, hearing that those were slaine, and throwen oute, for whome them selues made that hatt, determined not to fight for them, which were already deade, but returned to Aynes agayne.

This vnworthy, and bylaynouse ende of lyfe, had the two graue, and modeste, olde men: exalted to the Tyte, & Diademe, of the Emppre, throughe the nobilytie of theyr byrthe, and singuler desertes. After whome, Gordian beyng almoste .xiii. yeres olde, and of all the people proclaymed Prynce, tooke vppon hym Them² pyre.

The ende of the eyghte,
and laste Booke of
Herodian.

The Annotations in forme of a
Table after the order of the Alphabet, contay-
nyng the expolition of many wordes, Histo-
ries, Fables, lytuacions of places, and des-
cription of Countreyes, seruyng to
the more easie vnderstandynge
of the presente Wy-
llowe.

A.



Achilles, was one of the most valyaunt
Capitaynes of the Grekes, againste
Troy, Sone of Peleus King of Thra-
ce, & Thetis the Doughter of Chiro,
by who he was instructed, in the sea-
tes of Armes. He was slayne by Pa-
ris, the Sone of Priamus, and Hecuba,
at Troy & Crete, in y^e Temple of Apollo: into y^e whi-
che, he was come, during the truce betwene the Gre-
kes, & Troians, vnder assuraunce, to marye Polixena
the Doughter of Priam^{us}. In al partes of his body, he
was wout dainger of wounding, sauing in the sole of
y^e foote. By y^e which, his mother Thetis held him, whe-
she plunged him, for y^e same purpose, in Stir, one of
th infernal floodes. In y^e same part of his foote, not plo-
ged, did Paris wounde him, whereof he died. And was
buried in a litle hil called Sigeu, hard by Troy, wher,
during the siege, the Grekes, encaped. In the warre
betwene the Grekes, and the Troians, he slew Hec-
tor, & Troilus, the Sones of Priamus, and Hecuba, &
Brytherne of the laide Paris. He was in heichte (as
Licophron wyrteth.) vii. cubites.

Adolescencie is the age betwene Childehood, and
mans age: that is betwene. xiiii. and .xxi. yeres. Ser-
uius y^e Gramariē, & Varro, hath deuided the Ages, in
to Infancie, Boyes age, Adolescencie, Youthe, & olde age,
without any mencio of the perfect age of mas estate.
The whiche, after the same diuision, is contepned be-
twene youthe, and olde age. Infancie endureth vnto
vii. yeres. Boyes age vnto. xiiii. complete.

D. y.

But

The Table

But Seruius Tullius, a King of the Romaynes, reckened all those which were vnder the age of. xlii. yeres to be Boyes, and after. xlii. yeres, vntyll. xlii. to be yonge men, and then he called olde men, whyche were aboue. xlii. yeres of age. Beyond that is the age decrepite, vncertayne, and doubtfull. Acthope: loke on this worde Libye.

Alexander the grete, was the Sone of Philyp, king of Macedonye, and Olympias. In his tender age, he was instructed in learning. And after that, by y space of. x. yeres, brought vp in Philosophy, vnder Aristotle, the most excellent Philosopher of all his time. After the death of hys Father, coueting to be Lord of all the worlde, he apparayled his Arme, against Darius the King of Persia: who wyth his predecessours, had bene the auncient enemyes of Grece. Hym dyd Alexander banquish in sundry batayles, and deppeued of the Persian kyngdome. But after he had obtained many notable victories, in the. xxx. yere of hys age, he dyed by payson, at Babylō, as Iustin writeth. Neuerthelesse, Plutarcke affirmeth the contrary, sayinge that he died of an Ague, very behement, wherein was no suspicion of Payson. The Provinces, and Countreys, by him Conquered, did Perdicas, (vnto whome at his deathe withoute any more wordes, he deliuered hys Kyngdome) distribute amonges many Gouernours: who altered their offices of gouernauce, into Royaulnes, and made them selues Kynges. And so was Chemppe of Alexander broughte into manye kyngdomes. The respynde of hys lyfe, ye maye rede in Plutarcke, and Quintus Curtius.

Alexandrye, whereof Herodian speaketh in the thirde Booke, is a Citie of Siria, hard by a reuerio of the Sea, called Sinus Arabicus, wherefore loke by thiese wordes, Arabicus Sinus. There is an other Citie called Alexandrye, in the Region of Troas, where Trope the greate stode, as Plinie writeth, in the. xxx. Chapter of hys. v. Booke.

An

of annotations.

Anonter Cytye, named Alerandrie, is in Egypte, situate vpon the Sea side, oueraneast the Ile Pharos, as sayth Plinie in the. xxxi. Chapter of the same boke. Thys Cytye is the principall of all Egypte, as London is of England. Into the whiche Ptolomeus the kyng of Egypte, desyred to be remitted by the Romaynes, as it appeareth by many Epistles, of Cicero, vnto Lentulus, in the fyrste booke of hys familiar Epistles. Of thys Cytye, doth Herodian make mencion in the. iiii. booke of his Historye, and of the Treason wrought agaynst the Citezens thereof, by Antonyne. There is another Cytye named Alerandrie, by the mountaynes of Casry, in the Realme of Sogdia, nygh vnto the Bactrians, whych hath on the South the mountaigne Caucasus. Another Alerandrie, buylded lyke wyse by Alexander the great, standeth in the Region called Margiana, of a Kyuers name, whiche is Margus. The same hath on the West side Hyrcania, on the East the Bactrians, and on the South, the Realmes of Parthia, and Aria. Thys Citie was destroyed by the Barbarous people, and in the same place was a new buylded, by Seleucus the Sonne of Antiochus, who named it Seleucia, as recordeth Plinie, in the. xvi. Chapter of his. vi. boke. Another citie called Alerandrie, in the Countrey of Carmania in Inde, boundynge vpon Persia. Of theise Cityes and countreys loke Ptolomeus and Plinie.

Alcinum loke thys worde Aquileia. Amphitheater, is a place made to behold plaies in, the which is in foure round, as yf it were buylded of. ii. Theaters, and therfore is called Amphitheater. A Theater is made halfe in compasse, betwene the ij. corners wherof, is played that whiche men behold, called of the Latyns Scena. The next place vnto it, is called Orchestra, where the Senatours & Staige Ambassadors do sit. In the middes of the Theater, are the Seates for knyghtes, and that place, is named Canea. Rounde aboute the Theater withinfurth are degrees, and steppes, so made, that the hygher they ascend, the longer, and larger they are. Upon the which

D.iii.

the

The table

people do sit, as euery man can get him place. **Marce**
Scaurus (as witnesseth **Plinie** in the. **rrrii**. boke, the
rv. chap.) for one playe, which endured. **rrr**. dayes on-
ly, dyd buyde a Theater, the greatest of all other, that
were euer made by mans handes. The Scene where-
of, was of thre stages, & had. **iii**. C. l. r. Pillers of mar-
ble of **Affrique**: of the whiche, the higher were of one
piece, and **rrrbiii**. fote in height. The lower parte of
Scene was of Marble, and the stage in the myddes of
Glasse, which neuer man heard of before. There was
besydes, for y more gorgeous beautypeng of it. **iii**. M.
Images of Copper, with so much rycheesse, Tapistrie
of golde, and Tables of auncient & notable pictures, y
it is almoste incredible to beleue, as wyrteth **Plinie**.
The greeces wheron men sate in the same, did receiue
lrrr. M. persons. **Caius Julius Cesar**, fyrst of all, buil-
ded an Amphitheater, in the fælde called **Campus**
Martius: whyche **Augustus** pulled downe, and in the
same place, made a Tombe.

Antioche, is a parte of **Siria**, boundynge vpon the
Royallme of **Cilicia**, as sayeth **Plinie**, in the **rii**. chap.
of hys fyfth boke. In thys part, is a Cytie of the same
name, as wyrteth **Ptolomeus**, in the fourth Table of
Alpa. Thys is the Cytie, to the whiche **Antonyne**
went, and from thence, to **Alexandrie** in **Egypt**. Ther
is another **Antioche** in the countrey of **Affrya**, where
Alexander vanquished **Darius**: the whych is next vnto
to **Syrya** (as wyrteth **Plinie**, in the. **rii**. chapyter
of hys. **vi**. boke. Amonges the Isles of the **Alpa** Sea,
Plinie in hys. **v**. booke, the. **rrr**. Chapyter, sayeth,
there is one called **Antioche**, whyche standeth in the
Sea of **Pamphilia**.

Apoplexie, as sayeth **Galien** in the. **v**. chapyter of hys
thyrde booke of the places affected, is a disease, by the
whych, all a mans spewes, and baynes, do lose theyr
force, of fealynge, and mouynge. Thys dyscase com-
meth sodenly, and by the same, a man shall vnethes
fetche brythe.

Affrike

of annotations.

Affryke. The Cosmographers do deuide y **Earth** into
thre partes. That is to wete, **Enrope**, **Asie**, & **Affryke**.
Europe is seperated from **Asia**, by the **Ryuer Tanais**
and the Lakes called **Meotides**, wythin y whiche **Ta-**
nais doeth fall. And it is desseuered from **Asie**, by the
Sea **Mediterrane**, so named, for that it is in the myd-
des of the earthe, or elles, because it is enclosed wyth
earth on euery syde, sauyng where he hath his yssue,
betwene the pillers of **Hercules**: wherof, the one is in
Mauritania, the other in **Spayne**. Betwene the whi-
che, **Hercules** made waie, and passage for the **Mediterr-**
ane Sea, to ioyne with **Thoccean**. And it hath none
other yssue, then betwene those two pillers. It exten-
deth towarde the **East**, as farre as **Siria**, whiche is
in **Asia**. Towardes the **North**, vnto the lakes **Meoti-**
des. On the **South** parte, it hath alwayes **Affryque**,
whiche is sequestred from **Asie**, by an arme of y Sea,
called **Sinus Arabicus**. That is the **Redde Sea**, wher
by the chyldren of **Itraell**, passed out of **Egypte**, into
the **Desertes** of **Arabie**. **Europe** is muche **North**,
and so is it **West** in respecte of **Asie**. And it is the least
of the thre partes: conteynyng the Isles of **England**,
and **Scotlande**, and the nexte Isles ther vnto, **Spayne**,
Fraunce, **Almayne**, **Italye**, & **Grece**, wyth the Isles
theyr neyghbours.

Asie conteyneth **Asie** the lesse, **Lydia**, **Caria**, **Bythya-**
nia, **Galatia**, **Capadocia**, **Armenia**, **Cilicia**, **Sarmat-**
ia, **Assiria**, **Arabia**, **Persia**, **Parthia**, **Media**, **Judea**,
the two **Indes**, and all the other countreies, whych
Ptolome describeth in hys twelue Tables.

Affryque which is **South**, conteyneth, **Mauritania**,
Numidia, the countrey of **Carthage** (whych so longe
tyme, helde warre wyth the **Romaynes**) **Libia**, **Ethi-**
ope, and **Egypt**. The Sea, called the great Ocean, en-
uironeth all these thre partes rounde aboute.

Aquileia is a Cytie situate in y tenth part of **Italye**,
after the deuision, whych **Plinie** maketh thereof, in
the **rbiiij**. Chapyter of the thyrde booke of hys natural
Hystoie, sayinge thus.

Here

The Table

Here foloweth tenth region of Italle, named Tenthie, adiacent vnto the Sea Hadriatpque. In this Region, there is a Ryuer called Silix, commynge oute of the Taurisane mountaignes, a Towne called Altinum, with a Riuer called Liguencia, descendyng out of the mountaynes Opitergines, and a Hauen of the same name. A towne called Concordia wyth a Ryuer, & a Hauen named Komatinum. The greate and lytle Tillauentum. Anassum another towne, whereby passeth y Ryuer Narannus. And the Ryuers Alsa, Patison, and Turrus, do passe by Aquileia, whiche Citie is distant from the Sea. xij. miles. For the reste, haue recourse to the Tert.

Arabie. There are. iij. Arabies. Thone called fertile, or happye. Another called Rockye. And the thyrde, named Desert. All thze berpe nygh together, as sayeth Ptolomee. And they are in Asia, nygh vnto the redde Sea, through the which the chyldren of Israell departed oute of Egypte passed, and immediatlye entered into the Desertes of Arabie.

Armenie is a Realme of Asia. The lesse Armenie soyneyth wyth Capadocia, on the Weste parte. And there is nothyng betwene them, sauyng the mountaignes. On the East part, it is soyneid with Armenie y greathauynge no more, but the Ryuer of Euphrates betwene them.

Towards the Southe, is the mountaygne Taurus: whych maketh separation of Armenia and Cilicia.

Towards the North, is the Sea Mediterrane, which in the Greke there, is called Pontus Eurinus. The great Armeny is beyond Euphrates. And hath on the East part the Hircanian Sea, & the mountaygne called Caspius. On the North aboue it, the Realmes of Colchis, Iberie, and Albanie. And towards y South, Mesopotamia, as Ptolomee hath described it, in y. iij. Table of Asia.

Asia. Loke on thys word Aphrique.

Arreniens, are people of Arabie, as sayeth Plinie in the. xliij. chap. of the. vi. booke of hys natural hystorie.

B.

Bithinie

of annotacions

Bithinie is a Royalme of Asia, nigh vnto Thrace betwene whome, & it, ther is nothig, but a streite goulfe of y Sea. In this Royaulme, are many goodly Cities, as Chalcedo, Nicomedia, Apamea, Heraclea, Nica, & other, as sayen Plyn, & Ptolomee.

Byzantium, as it appeareth by the Terte, in the beginning of Herodians thyrde Booke, is a Cytie of Thrace, of the whiche, the scituacion, and commodities, are sufficiently described in the sayde Booke. It is the same, which we at this day, call Constantinople.

C.

Capitol is a Hill in Rome, y which in olde time was called y Mount of Tarpeyns, wherin when they dygged, to lape the fundacion of Jupiters Temple which was there buylded fowze square on euery syde a hundreth foote in heighte, in the tyme of Tarquinus the proude, laste Kyng of the Romaynes) they founde a mans heade wyth the face hole vnperysched. The Latins call a head, Caput, whereof y place is called Capitole. The Mount called Tarpeius, had two lytle Hylles. On the one side the Temple of Jupiter, & on the other, the foztresse, or Palaice of Rome, whiche they called Arx Capitolina.

Cappadoce is a Royaulme of Asia, adiacet on y west part. to y Regio called Galatia. And on y East, to Armenie, thus dooth Ptolomee describe it in y first Table of Asye.

Carie. Looke on this worde Iouie.

Carre is a Citie of Mesopotamia, as sayeth the Tert, which is renowned, & spoke of, through the overthrow of Marcus Crassus. who was slaine, & his Army vanquished by the Parthians, nigh vnto y said Citie, as writeth Plutarch in y life of Marcus Crassus.

Carting was an vnde et exercise, wherin voluptuous Emperours gretly delited. The forme thereof, was to ryde in a Chariot, & with whipping, cause the horses which drew y same, to run very fast to and fro as it liked the. We may call it Chariottig also: other name haue I not for the laten worde of it, whiche is Aurigatio.

Cc j.

Chalcedon

The Table

Chalcedon is a City of Bithynia, vpon the Sea side, righte ouer aneantst Thrace, and the Citie of Constantinople. There is no more betwene them, as sayeth the Authoure, but a strait of the Sea, called Bosporus Thracius, or Propontius, or Hellespontus, which are all one, making seperatiō of Europe, & Asie,

Circenses were certaine exercises, played, and shewed in a place called Circus, whiche was compassed rounde about with a stone wall. In thiese plaies they used to runne wth horses, & to wrestle. They were called Circenses, as it were circum enses, y^e is to saye enuironned on euery syde wth swordes. For in olde tyme, al the Kunning, Fusting, Wrestling, and Combates of the Romaynes were in places enclosed, on the one side with Kiuers, & on the other syde with swordes, Clayus, and Hallebardes, to the ende that Colwar-des, & Dassar-des shuld not flee away wout danger.

Cohorte Pretorlane, are suche men at Armes, as garde the person of any Capitayne, Duke, Confull, King, or Emperour. For this name Pretor, is oftentimes taken for a King, Emperour, or Confull.

Colossus. The Latins called euery greate, and huge Image, Colossus. This Colossus, whereof Herodian speaketh in his firste Booke, was made by a notable workemā named Zenodorus, at the commaundemēt of Nero Emperour of Rome. And it was his Image, beyng a hundred and ten fote in height. The same Image was dedicated to the honour of the Sonne, after that the actes of Nero were condempned, and infringed for his cruell Tyranny, as saith Pliny in l. xxxiii. booke the. vii. Chapter. Ther was another Colossus at Rome, which Domitian caused to be made, standing vpon great pillars of Marble.

In the Capitole there was another Colossus, representing the Image of Apollo, whiche was. xxxi. cubytes of height, transported thither, by Marcus Lucullus, from a Citie called Apollonia in the Realme of Pontus. Amonges all such huge Images, Plinye,

in

Of annotaciōs

In the lastest Booke, and Chapter, saith y^e in Rhodes, there was the Image of the Sonne, passed al other in greatnes, made by Chares of Midea, discipule vnto Lisippus. The same was. lxx. cubytes in height. And fell downe by a meruailouse earthquake. lvi. yeres, after it was made. And although it be broken, yet is it at this present, a thig wōderful to behold. The Thombe therof, a man can vnethe fadome. And his fingers are as bigge as great Images. In y^e same city of Rhodes, there are an. C. more Colossi. But not so bygge as this, although the lesse of them, were sufficient, to win fame, and renowne to the Citie. For thole, & more description of the other, haue recourse to the also named Booke, and Chapter of Plinye.

Constantinople. Note on this worde Bizantium.

Cyrus, King of Persia, was the Sonne of one Cambises, of an obscure familie in Persia, & Mandane the daughter of Astiages King of Media. Who after the position of his dreame (by the whiche he vnderstode y^e his daughters Sonne shuld be King of all Asye, & that him self shuld lose his Royalme) caused Cyrus, immediately after he was bozne, to be put furth, & left alone in a Forrest, to y^e ende, he might be deuoured of wylde beastes. But there a Witche gaue him sucke, & defended hym from Beastes, and Wyres, vntill that the Kynges Sheperde founde hym, carped hym home to his wyfe, and gaue her the charge to nouryshe hym. The woman was afterwarde called Spacon, because amonges the Persians, a Dogge is so named. After that he wared greate, he was called Cyrus, by the Sheperdes his Companions, knowen to be Astiages daughters Sonne, and sente into Persia: where he obtained much credite, and authorite. Finally, he assembled an Armye, to make warre vpon Astiages, his Grandefather, from whom he berefte y^e Royalme of Media, vnto the which the Persians were subiect. And by thys meanes Cyrus became Kyng of Persie, and Media. Before hys tyme the Persians

C. ij. had

The Table

had no kinges, but were subiecte vnto other Royaulmes. After his victorie against Astiages, he banquished, & toke prisoner, Croesus the King Lidia, which was so riche. But in conclusion him selfe, was overcome, and slayne, by Thomyris Quene of Scythia, when he had reigned. xxx. yerres. Vnto hym, succeeded Cambyses, his Sonne, as Justin, in his first booke mentioneth. Eusebius sayeth, that Cambyses reigned. viii. yerres. Under Cyrus kynge of Persia, by hys owne permissiō, begā the reparaciō of y^e Tēple of Hierusalē: which notwithstanding was discontinued many yerres after. And at y^e last finished the. vi. yere of Darius Reigne kynge likewise of Persia, as witnesseth the. vi. & vii. Chapters of Esdras in the Bible, and Sabellique in the. vii. Booke of his seconde Enneade. After Cambyses, two Brethern called Magi, vsurped y^e kingdō. vii. Monethes. After whō Darius raigned. xxxvi. yerres. And in the seconde yere of his Reigne, Zorobabell, by his permissiō, renewed the reparacion of the Tēple of Hierusalē. This Darius, was nat he, y^e Alexander the great banquished: but that was the. x. king after him, called Darius also. In whom the Royaulme of Persia toke hys eande.

Cyzicum is a Citie of Asye, vpon the Sea syde, in a Royaulme called Misia the lesse, as witnesseth Ptolomee in the fyrst Table of Asie. And so sayeth Plinie in the. xxxii. Chapter of his. vi. Booke.

D.

DAnubie, or Danowe. Loke on Iffer.
Darius loke on these wordes, Alexander, & Ctes.
Dionisus the Elder, was a Tirant of Sicile, & Son of Hermocrates, as saith Sabellique. He was verie well learned, as writeth Plinie: who preferreth none before him, sauig Plato in Philosophye, & Philopen^r in Poetrie, two y^e notablest men of learning in all his time. In y^e same yere y^e Kingdō of Athenes ended, and Darius kynge of Persie dyed, Dionisus losse his Royaulme, as sayeth Sabellique, in the nynte Booke of hys fyrste Enneade. Wherein he agreeth not with

of annotations.

wyth Eusebius. Dyonisius Sonne was likewise named Dyonisius the yonger, who was also a Tirante of Sicile, and raygned in a citie called Siracuses: out of the whiche he was expelled twyse, ones by Dion: And the seconde tyme by Timoleon, sent agaynst hym by the Corynthians. After thys seconde expulsion, he kept a scholl, and taught yonge chyldezen at Corynthe, as writeth Valerius Marinius.

E.

Eridanus is a Ryuer of Italpe, otherwyse called Padus, whych cometh (as sayth Plinie in y^e. xvi. chap. the. iiij. boke of his natural History) out of a mountaigne called Vesulus. After that, he hideth him selfe in the grounde, and issueth out againe in the conynnes of the Foruibientes. Of all Ryuers ther is none more renowned. The Grekes cal it Eridanus. There is no Riuer besydes, that encreaseth greater, wythin so lytle space. For it hath a merueylous abundaunce of water, falling into y^e Sea Adriatique. Betwene the crytes of Rauenna, and Altinum, it is verie damageable vnto the Countrey. For by the space of. vi. thousand myles (as sayeth Plinie) it doeth seuerate it selfe, into many Ryuers, & Lakes. And because that euery Ryuer is large, and great, they call the same seuen Seas, as witnesseth Herodotus, in hys eighth boke.

Euphrates. Loke on thys worde Syrye.

Europe. Loke on thys worde Aphryque.

G.

Galatians, are those whiche inhabit the realme of Galatia, which is in Asya, betwene Bithinia & Capadocia, as sayen Plinie in the laste chap. of hys fift boke, and Ptolome in y^e fyrst Table of Asye. The same Realme is called also Gallogretia, and the people Gallogreci: because, that when the Gauls came

The Table

to the ayde, and succour of the kyng of Bythynne, they helde and possessed that part of the Royallme. Wherefore it is so named, as wyrteth Sabellique.

Callus a Kyuer. Looke on theple wordes Goddesse Desynuntynne.

Ganymedes was Son of Tros king of Phrygia, who had Iliue, Ilus, Affacus, and Ganymedes. The fables surmise (which is the most comon opinion) y Jupiter rauished Ganymedes for his beauty, by an Eagle. But Sabellique in the .x. booke of hys fyrste Enneade, sayth, y Ganymedes the Son of Tros, was rauished by Tantalus kyng of Waphlagentie, to abuse hym. Whereby there arose great warre, betwene the two kynges. And it is most lyke, that being very yonge, he was iniuriouly rauished by Tantalus, vnder y signe of the Eagle, were the battayles fought vpon the land, or Sea. Whych hath bene cause of the inuentio of the Fable, that sayeth that the Eagle, by ordynance of Jupiter, rauished hym.

Gaule or Fraunce. Cesar in his commentaries saith, that Gaule is deuided into thre partes, wherof y Belges helde the one, the Celtes another, and the Aquitans inhabited the thyrde. The Aquitans are seperated fro the Celtes, by the Kyuer of Garumna. The Celtes are sequestred from the Belges, by the Kyuers of Marne and Seyn. And the Belges are sundred from the Almaignes by the Rheyn. In the which diuision, Gaule Parbonique is not comprised. Ptolomee in hys fourth Table of Europe, and in the chapyters of the same, dothe deuyde Gaule into foure partes: appoyntyng Gaule Aquitanyque, to extende as farre as the Kyuer of Loyre. And from Loyre, to the Kyuers of Seyn, and Marne, is Gaule named Lugdunensis. And from Seyn, vnto Rheyn, Gaule Parbonique extendeth it selfe, vnto the Sea Mediterranean, beyonde the Alpes, and the Kyuer Aras, vnto the Pyrrhenyan Mountaignes. Gaule the rounde,

or other

of annotations.

or otherwyse called Lumberdye, is in the Lynnytes of Italye, and is the same countrey, whych is named Liguria, next vnto the Alpes, and the Sea. All the other Gaule, or Fraunce, is called Gaule bering buche. Gaule Parbonique, was before tyme named Brachata, as sayeth Plinite, in the thyrde booke, and the fourth chapyter.

Goddesse Desynuntynne, is y same that Cicero in hys booke of the lawes, calleth the Moother Idea, whych is the selfe same, that the Romaynes name the Moother of the Goddes, and doo greatlye reuerence.

Liue in the .ix. booke of hys seconde warre Parbonique, sayth that they founde in the Sybyline booke, (whych were perused and redde ouer, because of the often raynyng of stones the same yere) that when so euer anye straunger, and forreyn enemye, shoulde moue warre agaynst Italye, he myghte be vanquished, and expelled thence, yf the Moother Idea were transported to Rome, from a sylde of Phrygia named Pefinus. The whych to do, the Romaynes sent siue Ambassadors, wyth fyue greates hyppes, called Cynqueremes, to Atalus king of Asie. Who led them to the place called Pefinus, deliuered them the holie stone, whych the inhabitauntes there, called y Moother of the Goddes, and appoynted theym to carue it vnto Rome. It was receyued at the Hauen of Ostia, by Publius Scipio, beyng iudged at that tyme, the worthiest manne in all the Cytie, to do the same, carued vnto Rome, and sette in the Temple of Victorie, wythin the Palayce, the .xiiij. daye of Apryll, whych was celebrated, and sollemnized wyth festes, and gystes, that the people in greates aboundance offered vnto the Goddesse. Whych playes the Romaynes called Megalesia.

The same Goddesse is called Ops, whome they suppose to be wyfe of Saturne, called Rheia, by the whych they vnderstande the earth, that geueth affluence and abundaunce of all thyng.

She

The Table

She is otherwile named *Cybele*, of the name of a *Hyl* and *cytpe*, of *Phrygia* where her sacrifices were first instituted. Or she is called *Cybele*, of *Cimbals*, which signifyeth the *Instruments*, and *Soundes*, they used in the sacrifices. The *Poetes* sayen, that she rode in a *Chariot*, and had a crown of *Towers*: whereby they saye, that the earthe hangeth in the ayre, and the world tourneth alwayes rounde aboute and that the earth hath vpon it *Cyttes*, and *Towers*, wherein be *Towers*.

She is called *Mother* of the *Goddess*, because she engendreth all thyng. She is also called *Pales*, for y she is y *Goddess* of *Sheperdes*, & her feastes are called *Pallia*. And she is also surnamed *Berecynthia*, of a mountayne of *Phrygia* called *Berecynthes*. Accordyng to the diuersitye of her names, she hath dyuers powers, dyuers sacrifices, and dyuers ministers.

Vnder thesle names, *Cybele*, *Berecynthia*, *Goddess*, *Persephuntyne*, & *Mother Idea*, because they came of names of places in *Phrygia*, from whence this *Goddess* was broughte to *Rome*, is no diuersitie of yntendyng signified.

This *Goddess* hath *Priestesses*, and *Ministers*, called *Galli*, by the name of a *Riuer*, named *Gallus* in *Phrygia*. The water wherof, causeth theym to be mad that drynke it. Those *Priestesses* be gelded, who beyng surred wyth madnesse, noddyng theyr heades, by and downe, wyth great noyse of small *Belles*, whych they carped, did prophesye, and tell of thynges to come, in that madnesse. They were otherwyle called *Corymbantes*.

3.

Trium is the same *Cytpe*, that we call *Trope* the great. *Alus* son of *Tros*, in y countrey called *Troas* of the countrey wherin it stode, it was named *Trope*, as wytnesseth *Sabellique*, in the fyfth booke of his first *Enneade*. The Countrey is ioynnyng vnto *Phrygia*,

of annotations.

gia on the *East*, and towardes the west it hath the *Sea Hellespontique*, as *Ptolomee* hath described it, in his first *Table* of *Asie*.

Illiria. The *Royalme* of *Illiria*, described by *Ptolomee* in his .v. *Table* of *Europe*, hath on y *North* *Coste*, y. ii. *Pannonies*: on y west, y countrey called *Iliria*. Towardes the *East*, it hath y high *Misia*. And towardes y *South*, a part of *Macedonia*. This *Royalme* is also named *Liburnia*, & y part which extedeth towardes y high *Misia*, is called *Dalmatia*. At this present, the *Illiria* *Regio* is called *Sclauonia*. Loke *Ptolomee* in y said .v. *table* of *Europe*. *India*. There are .ii. *Indes*, both in *Asia*, & ioynnyng together, wherof thone maketh an ende of *Asie*, towardes the west, & is called *Inde*, beyonde the *Riuer* of *Ganges*. On this side the *Riuer*, is *Inde*, called *Inde* on this side *Ganges*, which hath on the *East* syde, the same *Riuer*.

On the west, the *Royalmes* of *Paropamisades* *Arachosia*, & *Sedresia*. On y *North*, y mountaine *Imaus*. And on the southe the *Indian* *Sea*, as sayeth *Ptolomee* in the fyfth *Chapiter* of the .x. *Table* of *Asie*.

Jocasta was y wife of *Laius* King of *Thebes*. After whose deceasse, she married her own son *Oedipus*, by name. And had by him .ii. childre, *Etheocles*, & *Polinices*: who fought together, after *Oedipus* death, for the *Royalme* of *Thebes*. And in y same combat, both y *Wretches* slew one an other, as saith *Sabellique*, in y .viij. Booke of his first *Enneade*. For this cause, did y *Alexandrians*, in mocquerie, call *Antonines* *Mother* *Jocasta*: because *Antonine*, for to obtayne *Themipyre* alone, had slayne his *Brother* *Geta*, as the .ij. *Sones* of *Jocasta*, slew one an other, for the *Royalme* of *Thebes*.

Ionie. *Pliny* in the .v. Booke, the .xxxix. *Chapiter*, sayeth, that the Countrey of *Lydia*, watered ouer wyth the *Riuer* of *Meander*, very crooked, and full of turnynges, both extende aboute *Ionie*: hauing on y *East* syde *Phrygia*, on the *North* *Misia*, and on the southe *Caria*.

The which Countrey of *Lidia*, was before called *Medie*. By y description, y *Ptolomee* maketh in y first *Table* of *Asia*, *Ionie* is y self same *Regio*. y is called *Libye*, or *Sponge*. At the lest wyle, it is a parte therof: belyng y f. j. upon

The Table

upon the Sea, whiche for that cause is called Ionian. The same Ionian Sea, dothe extend fro the Bankes of Ionia, vnto the bankes of thysle of Sicile. Plinye in the .iii. booke, the .xi. Chap. sayeth, that the Greckes deuyned the Ionian Sea, into the Sea of Sicile, and the Sea of Crete, so called, bicause of the nigh Isles. Ptolome in the .v. booke, the seconde Capiter, sayeth, that the Regiõ propælie called Asia, hath on the North syde Bithinia. On the West, a parte of Propontis, the Sea Hellespontique, the Sea Icarid, & the Sea Hyztoique. On y East, the Regiõs of Licia, Pamphilia, & Salatia. And on the Southe, the Sea of the Rhodes. In this Region, are comprehended, Lidia, & Caria, & other small Royalties. In Lidia is Ionia, as it is before said. And Ionia is ryght ouer aneand an Isle, called Icarid: whercof, the Sea there, is named Icarid. And it is the same, which is called Ionian. Caria is betwene Lidie, & the Sea of y Rhodes. On the West it hath the Sea Icarian, or Hyztoique. And on y East is Licia, ioyned to Pamphilia.

¶ *Micus Sinus*, is a reflexion, & bendinge of the Sea, which hath on the West, thysle of Cipres. And on the East, Siria, ioyned vnto the Bankes of Siria. And on the North syde, is the Countrey of Cilicia. In y plaine by the same turning of the Sea, is the Citie of Alexandria, builded by Alexander y grece, in memorie of y battail by him wonne, against Darius King of Persia. In this place also, was the battayle betwene Scuerus, & Riger.

¶ *Iffer* is a great, and meruaylouse Riuer, otherwys called Danubie, or Danowe: cominge oute of a mountayne of Almanie, named Arnoba. Beyond the Alpes, it passeth by innumerable Countreys. The further it runneth, the more it encreaseth, retaining the name of Danow, but yll it cometh by the Countrey of Illiria, now called Sclauonic, where he chaungeth hys name, and is called Iffer. And receyuinge hys encrease, of .lr. Riuer, which fall into hym, he departeth from y earth, and entreth into the Sea Pontique, by .vi. grete armes, as sayeth Plinye, in the .iii. booke, the .xi. Chapter, of his Histozie naturall.

L.

Aolodicea

of annotations.

L Aolodicea, is a Cytie of Siria, nigh vnto the Sea, and not very farre distant from Antioche: whiche is also in Siria, but further from the Sea, as wytnesseth Ptolomee, in the .iii. Table of Asye.

¶ *Latium*, is a parte of Italye, in the whiche standen Rome, Tusculum, Preneste, Ardea, Tibur, and many other Cities, as writeth Ptolomee, in the syxte Chapter, of the sytte Table of Europe. Those that enhabyte this parte of Italy, are by the Romaynes called Latini.

¶ *Laurentum* is a Cytie of Italye, in the same parte that is called Latium, nigh vnto Hostia. By Laurentum, there is a forest, sacred vnto the Sonne, as sayeth Plinye, in the .v. Chapter of his thyrde booke.

¶ *Liber Pater*, in Englyshe free father, is the selfe same God, that we call Apollo, as saith Macrobius, in his Saturnales, after Aristotle, for diuerse causes: and amonges other, bicause that in Thrace, there is a Temple, and Oratory, dedicated vnto Liber: wherin answers, and Prophesyes are rendered. But in the same Temple, those whiche oughte to Prophecie, do drinke wyne excessiuely, as they whiche render oracles in the Cytie of Clarium, after thei haue dronke muche water. The Lacedemoniens, in the sacrefyses whiche they made to Apollo, ware Garlandes of Iuyce, as yf they dyd sacrefyce to Bacchus. The Boetians, affirminge that the Hyl Parnassus was sacred vnto Apollo, dyd alwayes there kepe the Oracle of Delphus, and the Caues of Bacchus, dedicated vnto the same God. For thys cause, in that Hyl, were the sacrefyses made vnto Apollo, and Liber Pater.

¶ In thys Hyl also, where the Bacchanals celebrated, ones in two yere: whiche shewed, that Apollo, Lyber, and Bacchus, were but one God. And he was called Lyber, that is to saye Jrea, bicause the Sonne, whiche we call Apollo, dothe fearely,

f. f. y.

The Table

freatly, and without subiection, tourne, & compasse the worlde: beyng sometimes highe, and sometymes lowe, and keepinge his course diuerse wayes.

Lybie is a Region of Aphrique: And it is expedient to know, that there are. ii. Libies. For Ptolomee in the. v. Chapitre of his. iiii. Table of Aphrique, setteth one Libye, ioyned with Egipte, & the Marmarike Region.

And saith y Egipt, & the Marmarike Region, haue on the West part, the Royallme of Cirenia: folowynge the continuation of one Lynce, whiche draweth by a City called Marins, that standeth vpon the Egyptian Sea.

And in the. vi. Chapt. of the. iiii. Table of Aphrique, he setteth an other Libye, called Libye the Inner, whiche hath on the North, the seconde Mauritanie. Aphrique y lesse, & the Cirenayake Region. On the East, a parte of the Marmarike Region, & Ethiope, whiche is vnder Egipt. Towardes the South, it hath Ethiope y Inner.

And towardes y west, it hath y west Sea. For more description hereof. looke Ptolomee i y forsaide Chap. & tables.

Lybie is a Countrie of Asia, vpon the Egean Sea, betwene Phrygia, & Caria. This Countrey hath. ii. Rivers of great fame. The one of them, is on the North coste, & called Pactolus, wherein are founde many baynes of Golde. And thother is in the South syde, & called Meander, which is very croked, & biding in & oute. Loke Ptolomee, in the fyrste Table of Asye.

P.

Mauritanie. Ptolomee in his first Table of Affrike appointeth. ii. Mauritanies. Thone whereof, is more West, right ouer aneast Spaine Betique, and called Mauritania Triganica. Thother beinge more nere Thozient, is named Mauritania Cesariensis, and on the East parte ioyned vnto Numidia.

Medes, be the people of the Royallme called Media. Ptolomee in his. vi. booke, the secōde Chap. sayeth that this Regiō hath on y North cost, a part of the Hyrcania Sea. On the West, y grete Armenia, and Assie. On the

of annotations.

On the East Hyrcania, & Parthie. And towardes the South, it hath the region called Corinthena. Thus is this regiō described in the. v. table of Asie. Plinie in the. vi. booke, the. xxv. chap. sayeth that Marcus Agrippa sayd, y Media, Parthia, & the countrey of Persie, had on the East the river Indus. On the West the river Tygris. On the North Taurus, & Caucasus. And on the South the redde Sea.

Media. Looke on the worde Medes.

Mesopotamie, is a royallme of Asie, betwene the rivers of Euphrates, & Tigris, as sayth Plinie, in y. vii. chap. of the. v. booke. And in the. vi. booke, the. xx. chap. he sayeth, that all the countrey of Mesopotamie was subiect vnto the Affricans. Looke more on thys worde Syrys. Missiens. The hygh Missie, as Ptolomee hath described it, in the ninth table of Europe, is boundyng vpo Thrace on the East part. On the South vnto a lytle Royallme named Dardania, which is aboue Macedonia. And on North vnto the River of Danowe. The lowe Missie is nygh vnto y falling of Danowe, in the sea called Pontus Euxinus. Loke on this word Propontys. The Missiens are those, which inhabit these. ii. regions. Plinie in the. xxvi. chap. the thyrde booke, called these royalmes Missia. Ther are. ii. other in Asie, after the description that Ptolomee maketh in the fyrste Table of Asie. Thone called Missia the more, & thother Missia the lesse: both ioynyng to Phrygia, vpo the Hellespontian Sea.

P.

Nicea is a cytye of Bithynie, as sayen Ptolomee, and Plinie.

Nicomedia is a Cytye nygh vnto the Sea, in the Royallme of Bithynie.

Numidia is a countrey in Affrike, betwene Mauritanie, & the countrey of Carthage, after the description of Ptolomee, in the. ii. table of Affryke. Thys countrey was very much renowned, throught the vertue of Masinissa who was king sometyme therof. Th inhabitants are called Numidians, or Nomades, because y often tymes they chaunge theyr habitations, & carry theyr householdes fro one place to another in wagons, as saith Plinie in y

f. iii.

thys

thyrd chap. the. v. boke of hys naturall hystoꝛy, & Sa-
bellique in the fyrst boke of hys. v. Cinnade. D.

Ogia be sacrifices, made aswell vnto the Moother
of the Goddes, as vnto Bacchus, & other Goddes,
by the pyesses called Galli, that are made.

Ocean is the great Sea, that enuironeth al y earthe,
and ioyneþ hym self w the Mediterrane Sea, betwene
the pylers of Hercules. Thone wherof is in Maurita-
nia, & called Abilla. And thother in Spayne named Cal-
pe. The Mediterrane Sea, is enclosed w earth on euery
syde: that is to say, on the right side wyth Asseyke, and
on the lefte syde, wyth Europe and Asie. P.

Pannonie. Ptolome in y. v. table of Europe, doth
describ. ii. Pannonies, ioyning one to another.
Thone of the called the high Pannonie, bouñdeth
on the West, vpo a royaume of olde time called Pozicu,
& at this present Bauiers. Thother called y low Pan-
nonie, nigh ioyninge vnto the higher, & stretcheth to the
ryuer of Danow. Of y which riuer, declining towards
the South, that part which receaueth the ryuer Saus,
doth eand the lower Pannonie on the East. And on the
South, drawyng towardes y Hadziatique Sea, are the
royalms of Illiria, or Sclauonic, & Dalmatic. In these
regions, there be. ii. ryuers, Drauus, & Saus. Drauus,
which is the more swyft, cometh out of the countrey of
Bauiers. And Saus which runneth more slowly, out
of y Alpes Carnicyn, as saith Plinie, in the thyrd boke
the. xrb. chap. of hys naturall hystoꝛy.

Panthers are beastes very cruel, as y cōiunctiō of the
word doth sufficiently shew: which signifieth all cruel.
The skyns of these beastes are spotted ouer, w rounde
white spots. And there is no beast so notably spotted, as
y Panther, & y Tigre. These Panthers do saueur wōder-
ful swete. And for their saueur, other beastes, reioyte
vnto the. But yet they are asfeard of y Panthers fyerce
loke. Wherefore y Panther hideth his head, & suffreth al
y rest of his bodie to be loked on, y he mai the better take
his pray of the other beastes being amased. There is no
great difference betwene y Panther, & the Leopard, sa-
uyng y the Panther is moze white. And Plinie in hys
viij.

viij. boke, the. xvi. chap. sayth that he coulde neuer fynde
other difference. In the same chap. he telleth a meruay-
lous tale of a Panther, which rem: byed the good turne
that a man had before done vnto him. In Asie, and in
Asseyke there be many of these beastes.

Parthians. The royaume of Parthia, as Ptolomee
describeth it, in his. v. Table of Asie, stretcheth on the
North vnto Bircanie, & to y montaignes betwene the.
North & South it hath Carmanie. On y East the Arins.
On y West the Medes. And this regio is enuironed w
hills on al partes. So saith Plinie, in the. vi. boke y. xrb.
chap. Who saith also, y the Parthians haue. i. viij. king-
doms. And their Prouinces are betwene the res sea, on
y South, & the Bircania sea on y North. xi. of the be be-
yond Armentie, & the montaignes called Caspi, & do ex-
tend along by the Caspian sea, vnto the Scythians: draw-
ing towards y sea. And these realmes be called y high
realmes. Thother y low realmes. The Parthians, whi-
che are not in y first description, are called Scythians.

Patroclus the friend of Achilles, was in the warres
betwene the Grekes, & the Trojans, & there slayne by
Hector the sonne of Priamus kynge of Troy.

Perynthiens are a people of Thrace, wherem stādeth
a citie called Perinthus, w in y which ther is a fortreffe
called Bizia, some time belōging to y kings of Thrace.
In this royaume, there are no Swalowes, for y offence
of Cereus kyng of Thrace, as saith Plinie, in y. xi. cap.
the. iij. boke of his naturall hystoꝛy. Whoffence was this.
His wife named Progne, y king of Athenes doughter,
had a sister which hight Philomela: whom she greatly
desired to see. And Cereus to please her w all, promysed
to sette her sister. In bringing of her, he desloured her.
And to y end, she shuld not disclose it to any persō, he cut
out her tōge, shut her vp in a secret place, & told Progne
y she died by y way. But Philomela wrote w bloode in a
kerchief all the matter, & sent it vnto Progne her sister.
Who being chaufed w ire for y same, slew a litle childe
called Itis, which she had by Cereus, & presented it him
to eate. Cereus perceauing y matter, pursued her. And
she fleyng away was turned into a Swalowe, Cereus
him selfe into a Lapwinge, and Itis into a fesaunte.

The table

Belynus. Loke on these wordes Goddesse Belinutine.
Phari. Pharus is an Ile in the sea of Egypt, wherein standeth a cytve buylded by Alexander the great, ouer ancaust Alexandrie, which was lykewyse buylded by the same Alexander. The Ile Pharus is so nyghe vnto Egypt & Alexandrie, that at thys day, there is no more betwene the, but a bridge to passe fro thone to thother, as sayth Plinie, in the.ii. chap. of hys thyrde boke. In the cytve of Pharus, Ptolomeus Philadelphus the kyng, made a meruaylous hygh Tower, whych is numbred amonges the meruayles of the world: vpon the whych there is alwayes a great burnyng light, to shew the haun vnto them that saile by night on the Seas. And because that thys lyght is so renowned, many doo call all other Towers, whiche haue fyre and lyght in the, after that sort, Phari, as our present Authour doth him selfe. **Phenices.** Looke on thys worde Syrye.

Phrygie is a countrey of Asia, whych boundeth on the West by the countrey of Troye the great. And as sayth Plinie, in the. v. boke, the. xxi. chap. Thys countrey is ioyntuge to Galatia on the North. On the Southe it hath Lyconie, Pylidie, and Mygdonie. And on the East it toucheth the countrey of Cappadoce. Ptolome describeth thys countrey in the fyrst Table of Asia, and dothe not alot vnto it so great a compasse.

Pitanie is as muche to saye, as Laconique, or Lacedemonien; because Pytanus was the father of Thrasibulus the Lacedemonien, who was slayne in fyghting valiantlye in the warre. After hys decease, Pytanus shewed hym selfe very graue, and prudent, saying that it was a rare thyng to dye so well. Wherefore he wylled hys countrey men, not to weepe for hys death, because he dyed valyauntlye as it became a Lacedemonian. So sayth Ausonius the Poete in an Epigrame. Ther was another Thrasibulus of Athenes, whych had a boyce very loude, and bygge, of whome Plutarque speaketh in the lyfe of Alcibiades.

Pontus. Loke on thys worde Propontis.

Proconsull. In the tyme that Posthumus Albus, and Spurius Fulcius, were Consalles, and warre was

of anno tations

made agaynst the people called Equi dwelling in Italy, which warre was vnfortunate to the Romaines, Titus Quintus, was fyrst created Proconsul, to goo and ayde one of the Consalles, whiche was besieged: to the ende, that the other Consull mighte remaine at Rome, & leuy more men. And this Proconsull, had. vi. Sergeants goeing before him, with mases. His owne ornaments were like vnto the Consalles. Fro that tyme forwarde, it was ordeined, that those which had bene Consalles one yere, shuld the next yere foloweng be Proconsalles, for to go into the Prouinces. And euery of them had hys Liuetenant, which was called Legatus, to assiste him in hys affaires. The Proconsull had iurisdiction onely in the Prouince giuen vnto him, but that was nat voluntary, as to infranchise a bondeman. The fyrst day of January yere, did the Romaines chole two Consalles, which during thole yere foloweng, had as muche authoritee, as the Emperour. And because thei coulde not be in all places, when neade requyred, thei sent their Proconsalles into the Prouinces, which had there as greate authoritee, as if the Consalles had bene present. This word Proconsull also signifyeth hym, whych is in steade of the Consull, and dothe that, that the Consull shoulde doo, as sayeth Senestella, and Pomponius Letus, of the Romayne Magistrates.

Prodigious tokes, were signes, which oftentimes happened naturally. Nevertheless thei betokened our mishap, or other. Wherefore some do saye the prodigious is derpyed of that whych oughte to be feared, as the songe of the Harpie called Celena, whereof Virgile speaketh. Such are the singinge of a Raven, & the meetinge of a weasel, when a man goeth forth of his house. Whyle, and suche other lyke, did men in olde tyme, accöpte monstrous, and signifying some calamytie to ensue.

Propontis is a part of the Mediterrane Sea, whiche is deuided into diuerse partes. For Pontus is a parte of the same Sea, & Propontis is a parte of Pontus. Plinie in the. iii. boke. p. x. Chapter, saith the fyrste strait of the Sea, which is betwene Thrace, & Asia, (where Hercules made a bridge to passe ouer his Army) is called Hellespontus

¶ g. j.

The Table.

pontus. And that is, a small arme of y Sea, very strapte. After y it is somewhat brode, & then retourneth into a narrowe strapte again. This Sea, y is the broder parte, is called Propōtis, and the streite is named Bosphorus Thracius: beyng in bredthe. v. paces onely. Ouer thys streite, Darius king of Serse, & father of Verres, passed his army vpon a Bridge. In extēding further towards the North, beyōde Bosphorus Thracius, the Sea doth enlarge him selfe wonderfally, & is called Pontus Euxinus. And after y it retourneth to a strait again, & is called Bosphorus Cimmerius, whiche is thissue of one of the Lakes Meotides, y is the last part of y Mediterrane Sea, towards the North. All thiese Seas aboue specified, are partes of the Sea Pontus.

¶ Ptolomeus, after he had expelled Antigonus y Sone of Demetrius, helde the Royallme of Macedonie, as saith Sabbelique, in the. viij. booke of his. iij. Emeade. He sayned him selfe to be amozouse of hys owne Sister Arsinoe, and that he desyred to haue her to wyfe. But when she had condescended to the same, he shewed apparantly, after his receite into the City of Cassandra, that his purpose was, to bereue his syffer of the Citie, and to slea the chyldren that she hadde by Lysymachus her syffe husbāde: whome he slewe in their Mothers armes. At the laste, he was vanquished by the Gauls, vnder the leading of Belgius theyr Capitaine, take prisoner, and beheaded, and his heade pitched vpon a polle, to feare the Macedones withall.

¶ Pyrrhichius is a foote, or measure, composed of two short syllables, so called, by the name of Pyrrhus, king of the Royallme called Epyrus, whiche is nyghe vnto Thessalie, and beneth Macedonie. For that by him was inuented a kynde of daunsynge, called Pyrrhichius, as sayeth Plinye in, the. vi. Chap. of the. vij. Booke. The which leaping, or daunsing, was by moung, and measure of two short syllables, whereof Herodian in hys fourth Booke, maketh mention.

R.

Rhenus. Looke on this woorde. The Rhen.

S.

Sarmates

of annotations.

Sarmates are the people, and inhabitants of the Regions, Sarmatiques. Plinye, and Ptolome say: en there are two Sarmaties, one in Europe, another in Asie. And bothe nyghe vnto the Ryuer Tanais whych diuideth Europe, and Asye, and nyghe vnto the Lakes Meotides, whereinto Tanais dothe fall. Ptolomee in the. v. Chapter of hys. iij. Booke sayeth, that Sarmatie of Europe, extēdeth towards y North, as farre as the great Ocean, which in that part is called the Sarmatique Ocean. Towards the West, vnto the Riuer named Vistula. Towards the Southe, vnto the mountaynes Sarmatiques, which make separaciō of Sarmatie, and the countrey of Dace, and the lower Mysie. Towards the East, vnto a streite plot of yearth, named Isthm^s of y Lake, or Riuer, Bosis. And it hath on the one syde, the lakes Meotides, and the Ryuer of Tanais. And in the. v. Booke, the. ix. Chapter Ptolomee saith that Sarmatie which is in Asie, hath on the North, a Lande vnknewe. On the West it hath Sarmatie of Europe, vnto the heade, and the Ryuer selfe of Tanais. On the East the Lakes Meotides, vnto the streite of the Sea, called Cimmerius. On the Southe, it hath a parte of the Mediterrane Sea, called Euxinus Pontus, which is verpe nyghe vnto y Lakes Meotides, and it stretcheth from thence, vnto the Riuer Coxar. And from the Riuer Coxar, aboue the Regions of Colchis, Iberie, & Albanie, vnto y Hircanien Sea, whiche is otherwys named the Caspian Sea. And on the East it hath a parte of the same Hircanien Sea, and the Riuer of Rha, vntill that it entrech into Sarmatie, where Sarmatie stretcheth vnto the Scythians. Plinye, in the. iij. booke the. xij. Chapter sayeth that the Grekes dothe call them Sarmates, that we name Sarmates, and that the name of Scythians, passeth vnto the Sarmates, and to the Alans.

¶ Saturnales were feastes, and sacrifices of Saturne instituted, and ordeined syffe by Janus, to the honour of Saturne, who taughte hym to till the earth. And after Saturnes decesse, he deuyated an aultare, and sacrifices vnto hym, which are called Saturnales.

G. h.

The

The ancient fathers did solemnize thiese feastes one day only in the yere, that is to wete, in December, the viij. Calendes of January. But after y Caesar had added. ij. dayes more vnto that moneth, the feastes were celebrated, the. xvi. Calendes of January. Which caused, that the common people, being ignorant of these daies, did celebrate the feastes many tymes in the yere. Many Authours do affirme, that in olde tyme, the Pasturales endured. vij. dayes, during the which feastes, the Seruantes, & Bondemen, had as grete authoritis as their Maisters, and had licence, to doo what lyked them selues beste. So saith Macrobius, in the firste Booke, the. vi. Chap. of hys Saturnales.

¶ Peculer playes were celebrated ones in thre ages, whiche was thre hundred yeres.

¶ Septentrion. It is certayne, as sayeth Aulus Gellius in the seconde Booke, the. xxiij. Chapter of his Attique nyghtes, that the heauen hath foure Regions. That is to save the Oriente, Occidente, Meridionall, and Septentrio. The Meridionall, or South, & Septentrion, or North, are alwayes remayning in their own places. And the North, is in that place of the Heauen, which is ryght opposite to the South, whiche is in the middes betwene the Oriente, and the Occident where the Sonne neuer cometh. The Orient is very variable. For in the Sommer the Sonne ryseth in that place, from whence cometh the wynde Eize, whiche is somewhat towardes the North. In the myddle, or meane dayes, the Sonne ryseth where the wynde Eurus is, And in the shortest daies, it ryseth towardes the South, in the same part, y the wynde called Austerus, or other wyse Euronotus is. And as there are. iij. tylles, eue so are there thre settinges, or descendinges, like wyse mentioned, and thre wyndes cummyng fro the same thre settinges. That is to wete Eurus, named by y Grekes Argestes, blowing righte againste the wynde Eize. Fauonius, or Zephyrus, againste Eurus. And Africus, named by the Grekes Libs, againste Austerus.

The

The wynde which cometh fro the South, because y the South chaungeth not, is one, & in Latin called Auster, in Greeke Notus, because it is moyste. The North parte, by like reason, hath one onely wynde, which bloweth againste Auster. This name Septentrion, as saith Aulus Gellius, in the Chapter last cited, cometh of that, that. vij. starres doo make a signe in the heauē in forme of a wayne, & oren yoked to labour, or elles because the. iij. next starres, that a man may se, in the North, nigh one vnto an other, do make as it were a triangle, and thys sygne is ryght opposite vnto the Southe.

¶ Sirmium is a Cytie of the lower Pannonie towards the hygh Myse, drawinge to the East. It is beyond y Ryuer of Danowe, as saith Ptolome in the. xvi. Chap. of his thyrde boke Plinie, in the. xxiij. chap. of his thyrde boke, saith y a Ryuer called Vacuntius entereth into y Ryuer, Paus, nigh vnto the Citty Sirmium.

¶ Syrie, as Ptolome describeth it in the. iij. Table of Asye is seperated from Armenye on the North, by the mountaigne Taurus. On the South is Arabic: on y West stretchyng towardes y Ile of Cypre, is y Sea of Sirie, which is now called y Sea of Phoenicia. And on the East is Mesopotamye, Plynie in y. v. booke the. xii. Chapter sayeth that Syrie was the greatest of all the Prouinces, & therefore had y name of al Royalmer, which was subiect vnto it. For towards Arabi it was called Iudea, or Iury Palestine. Phoenice: & more inward Damascus. In stretchyng towardes y South, it is called Babylon. And betwene y Ryuers of Tigris, & Euphrates, it is named Mesopotamie. Beyond y Mountaine Taurus, it is called Sophene, where Euphrates is deuided into. ii. partes. And beyond Armenie it is called Assyrie. On y part where it boundeth vnto Cilicia, it is called Antioche. The part of Syria, which lyeth along the sea coast, are the countreies of Idumea, & Judea. And in stretchyng more hygher towardes the North, is the countrey of Phoenice. And after it is more nere Euphrates, it is called Sirie, as saith Plinie, in deuiding Sirie more exactly. All the Sea which is nigh thys part, is called the Phenician Sea. The people of Phoenicia, hath bene

Eg. iij.

meruap

The table

meruaylonse renouued, for that they were the fyfth
Inuenters of letters, of Astrologie, & of making thyss,
and all engens of warre.

II.

Taurus is a Mountaygne in Asie, meruaylonse
buge, & great, as sayeth Plinie, in the.rrvj. chap.
the.v. boke, of hys natural hystorie. For he saith,
that hys begynnynge is vpon the bancke of the Orien-
tal Sea, and passeth from thence by many peoples, and
Countreys: makynge separation betwene them. At his
begynnynge, which is at the Indian Sea, he hath on the
ryght syde the North, and on the lefte syde the Southe,
stretchynge towards to the West, by the middes of Asie,
saynge where he encountreth the Sea. After that, he
bendeth towards the North, and fetcheth a great com-
passe, on thow syde. Then he stretcheth towards the
Phoenician Sea. On thother side, towards the Pontian
Sea, and on another parte, to the Hyrcanian Sea. And
he goeth verpe nygh vnto the Lake Mæotide. And after
he hath verpe muche bowed, and tourned hym selfe, he
ioyneth wyth the Mountaynes Rhiphees, whiche are
in the North. And all the way as he passeth, he hath di-
uers names. For in India, where he begynneth, he is
named Imaus, after that, Paropanisus, Circius, Cha-
mbades, and manye other names. Where he is moste
hyghest, he is called Caucasus, which is aboue the royal-
mes of Colchis, Iberie, & Albanye. And where he stretch-
eth out hys armes, as yf he woulde embrace the Sea,
he is named Sarpedon, Coracesius, & Cragus. Where he
hath portes for seperation, and passage, albeit the same
be trenched, & naturally opened, yet is it all one Moun-
taygne. Those portes are called in one place Armeni-
en, which is Armentie. In another parte they are called
Caspian, nygh vnto the people called Caspy, who are
betwene Armentie the grent, & the Medes. And they are
in another place called the portes of Elype. And al-
though it hath in diuers places diuers names, yet is it
in Greke called by one name, the mountaynes Ceran-
quas, Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afore alledged.
Lyule, & thother hystories, sayen the thys mountaigne
doeth

of annotations.

doeth appoynte the lymyttes, and boundes of the Ro-
mayne Emperre.

Theater. Loke on thys worde Amphitheater.

The Aegean sea, parte of the Mediterrane sea, is be-
twene Asie, & Macedonie, and is called Aegean, because
that in the same Sea are manye Isles, so nygh one ano-
ther, that a farre of, they seeme to be Coates, which the
Grekes call Egas, or because that Aegea Queene
of the Amazones was therein drowned, or elles for that
Aegcus the father of Theseus, threwe hym selfe head-
longe into it, as sayth Sertus Pompeius.

The Ionian sea. Loke on thys worde Ionie.

The Rhein. Cesar in hys commentaries sayth, that
Gaule Belgique extendeth on the East, vnto the Rhe-
in. And beyonde it, are the Almaynes, and thereby the
Rhein doeth deuyde Gaule Belgique, from the Al-
maynes. In Gaule Belgique are comprised the coun-
treys of Lorraine, Lurenbourg, Guelders, & Flaun-
ders. Thys Ryuer cometh out of the Alpes, and fal-
leth into the Sea of Flaunders. Befeore his enterie into
the Sea, he maketh an Isle, whiche is the countrey of
Hollande, nygh vnto the whiche, is the countrey of
Guelders, bendyng towards the head of the same Ry-
uer. Beyonde it is Lurenbourg, and Lorraine, whych
is seperated from Lurenbourg, by the Ryuer of Moselle
whych cometh out of the mountaygne Bogesus, and fal-
leth into the Rhein. Out of the same mountaygne com-
meth the Meuse, whiche runneth lyke wyse into the
Flemyshe sea. Betwene the Meuse, and the Ryuer of
Somme towards the Sea, is the countrey of Flaun-
ders, whiche is seperated from Fraunce, by the sayde
Ryuer of Somme, as it is apperauntly described, and
fygured, in the newe Table adioyned vnto the Tables
of Ptolomee.

The men at armes Pictorian. Loke on these wordes
Cohorte Pictorian.

The seven Seas. Looke on thys worde
Cridanus.

The Tygre. Loke on thys worde Tygris.

The Tiberian Sea, is the low Sea, which extendeth
alonge

The table

alonge by Italie nigh vnto the cosse of Hoffe. And is so called by the name of Tyrrhenus, sonne of Atys, and brother of Lidus, kyng of Lydie, who came into Italy: and with his people inhabited that part of Italy, which is vpon the lowe sea, whereby the Region is also called Tyrrhenie. After, it was called Eulcie, and Petru-rie, as sayeth Sabellique.

Thrace is Royalme of Europe, in the furthest part thereof, towarde the Orient. The which Realme, hath on the North the lower Asie. On the West the higher Asie, and a part of Macedonie. On the East, the sea named Propontis, and the streyte of the sea called Bosporus Thracius, whiche maketh seperation betwene Europe, and Asie, as sayth Ptolomee in the .xi. chapter of the nynt Table of Europe.

Tribune is as much to saye, as Maister, Gouverneur, or Capitayne. And it cometh of this word Tribus, for that the people of Rome, was fyrst deuyded into partes, which they called Tribus. And the chiefe Gouvernours and Capitaines of the men at armes, elected out of those partes, were called Tribuni, as saith Marro treatinge of the Latyn tongue saith. Negecius in the .iiij. booke, & the .viij. chap. of the seates of warre. A Tribune of me at armes, had the charge of a band in an armie, wherein were as many horsmen as fote men. As of the fyrst Cohort of a Legion: which Cohorte, was the greatest, the principall, and the best fylled wth sage, discret, valyaunt, and experte warryours. In the same were .xj. C. fote men, and .C. xxxij. men at armes on horsebacke.

The Capytayne of thys Cohorte, was called the Tribune of the men at armes: who had vnder hym other Capytaynes, and Centurions, as well of fote men, as of horsmen. The other Cohortes of a Legion, whiche were nyne, lesse then the fyrste, were conducted euer by the Tribunes, or by the Praefectos. Vndens in hys commentarpe vpon the Pandectes, or Digestes, sayeth that we maye call a Tribune of men at armes, a Martyr. Negecius in the seconde booke, the twelue chapter, sayeth, that the honour of the Tribune of men at armes, was when the men at armes were honestly, and

cleanely

of annotacions

cleanely apparelled, well armed, and they harnes well fourbyshed, and shynynge byghte, and when they were well instructed, & exercised in the seates of warre. The aucthoritye and power of thys Magistrate, was for a whyle so greate, that the Tribunes of the men at armes, had ones the gouernaunce, and administration, of the Romayne common wealthe. And there was no Magistrate, or Dygnitye more hygher then thys. When there were no Consulles, whiche was aboute thre score and ten yeres, after the kynges were expelled out of Rome, the Common weale was ruled fye yeres by the Tribunes. After the fye yeres were expired, Consulles were agayne created, as sayeth Pomponius Letus. Dyuers tymes the Tribunes were restored vnto dygnitye agayne, as sayth Tytus Liuius, and they had the aucthoritye of the Consulles.

Fyrste they were thre, then foure, then tenn, and then twente, some tyme lesse, some tyme more. In Rome there were other Tribunes, whiche were named Tribunes of the people, who were created the yere, that Aulus Virginius, & Titus Metellus Ceminus, were Consulles, whiche was the .xviij. yere after the expulsion of y kynges. At which time the common people, being ouercharged, and vered wth debtes (after that the Senatours and noble men of Rome, had often tymes promysed to release, and discharge theym thereof, and then deceyued theym) seperated them selues from the Senatours. But Menenius Agrippa, one of the tenn Ambassadors sente vnto the people, whiche were assembled in the felde, reduced them by an oracion into amitye, created y Tribunes of y people, who were chosen out of the common people them selues. This dignite was sacred, & inuiolable, not subiect vnto the Consulles, as other officers were. The Tribunes of the people sate in the Senate house, at the very entry thereof. And that, that the Consulles decreed, they sometyme allowed, and sometyme reiected. And because they upheld, and mayntained the people, and spured them oftentimes againste the Senatours, and noble men of Rome, there rose many Ciuyle batayles betwene them. In the

h.

tyme

The Table

time of the Kinges, there were Tribunes whiche were Captaines of a hundred horsemen, and were called Tribuni Celerum. Ther were also other Tribunes which had the Charge of the Recett, & Custody, of all Trybute money, and were called Tribuni Aerarii, as muche to saye, as the Tribunes of the Tresoure.

Tigris is a Riuer, which hath his beginnyng in the Royalme of Armentie the great. At the first he runneth slowly, and where he beginneth to be swifte, he is called Tigris, for so do the Medes call an Arrowe. He falleth in to a Lake, called Arthusa, but yet it medleth nat wth the course of this Riuer, neither do the fyshes of them bothe come togithers. But the Riuer passeth throughte, clens vnlke the Lake, either in course, or coloure. At his meeting wth the Mountaine Taurus, he hydeth hym selfe wth in the earth, and runneth vnder the Mountayne, & then appeareth agayne on the other Syde. The place is called Zoroanda. And that it is the same Riuer, whiche hydde hym selfe in the grounde, it doth manifestly apcare. For when he commeth furth agayne, he bringeth any thing wth hym, that was cast into hym, on the other syde the Hill. He passeth after wardes, by an other Lake named Thesbidis, and then hideth him selfe in the earth again. After his next comming furthe, he is deuided into two partes, wherof thone runneth into Euphrates, and so into the Persian Sea. This Riuer maketh manye townynge, and resseruons, and separateth Mesopotannye fro Affrie. Loke Plinie, the. vi. Booke, the. xxvii. Chap. **T**yrus is a Cytie of Phoenice, vppon the same Sea, that Laodicea is. All the same Sea, is attributed vnto the Phoenicians, as it is sayd in this word Syble.

A.

Vesta is a Goddesse, which was daughter of Saturne, vnto whō the Virgines vestalles were consecrated. Numa Pompilius did firste institute in Rome those Virgins, neuertheles the same Relygiō was so auncient, that it came from the Trojans, to the Albaynes, and from them to the Romaynes.

Theyr

of annotations.

Theyr office, & profession, was to make sacrifice for the Romayne people, vnto y^e Goddesse Vesta. And to garde the eternall & inextingible fyre. Ther were. ii. Goddes- ses of thys name Vesta. The one was Moether of Saturne, by the which we vnderstand the earth. Thother was daughter of Saturne, which is she, that thei name the Vlygyn, by whome we vnderstande the fyre, as sayth Duide. Vnderstande nethinge by Vesta sayth he) but the liuely, & burning fyre, whercof thou seest no body to be engendred. She is therfore acceptet a Virgyn, because she doth not engender. The Romaynes sent as far as Phrygia, for the Image of this Goddesse Vesta, the which was brought, & set in y^e Temple of Victorie, which is in the Palaice, vnto whō those byrgyns were sacred, that had theyr house harde by the Temple. And were. xx. in numbze. Aulus Gellius in the. xii. chap. the fyrst booke of his Attique nightes sayeth, y^e the high Bishop toke that Vlygyn whiche should be sacred, by the hand, called her Amata (because the fyrst virgyn, instituted by Numa Pompilius, was so named) and did set her into y^e College of the Vestall byrgyns: where, from thence forwarde, she was wout emancipation, exempte from her fathers rule, & had power to make her Testament. If ye wil know, of what age, of what parentes, & of what stature, wth the qualitie of her person, and vnder what wordes, the highe Bishoppe dyd admitte a Vestall Vlygyn into the order, Looke Aulus Gellius, in the sayde Booke and Chappter.

The ende of the Annotations.

Printed at London, in Flete Strete, by Wyllyam Coplande, at the Signe of the Rose Garlande.

Cum gratia et privilegio regali ad imprimendum solum.

C Faultes escaped in the Pryntinge.

Fol.	Page.	Line.	Errata.	Reade.
ii.	i.	rrriij.	Paternus. Paternus.	
vij.	ii.	rrrbij.	facyon	factyon.
xij.	ij.	In the	Argent, dexteritee	agplytee.
lxvi.	i.	rbj.	vnto Counsayll,	Counsell vnto.
lxxxiij.	i.	i.	dismay you not,	dysmay you.
lxxrbij.	ij.	r.	repusynge,	repullsynge.
c.	i.	i.	sylenge, dyd sylenge,	attentisely. attentyfely.

